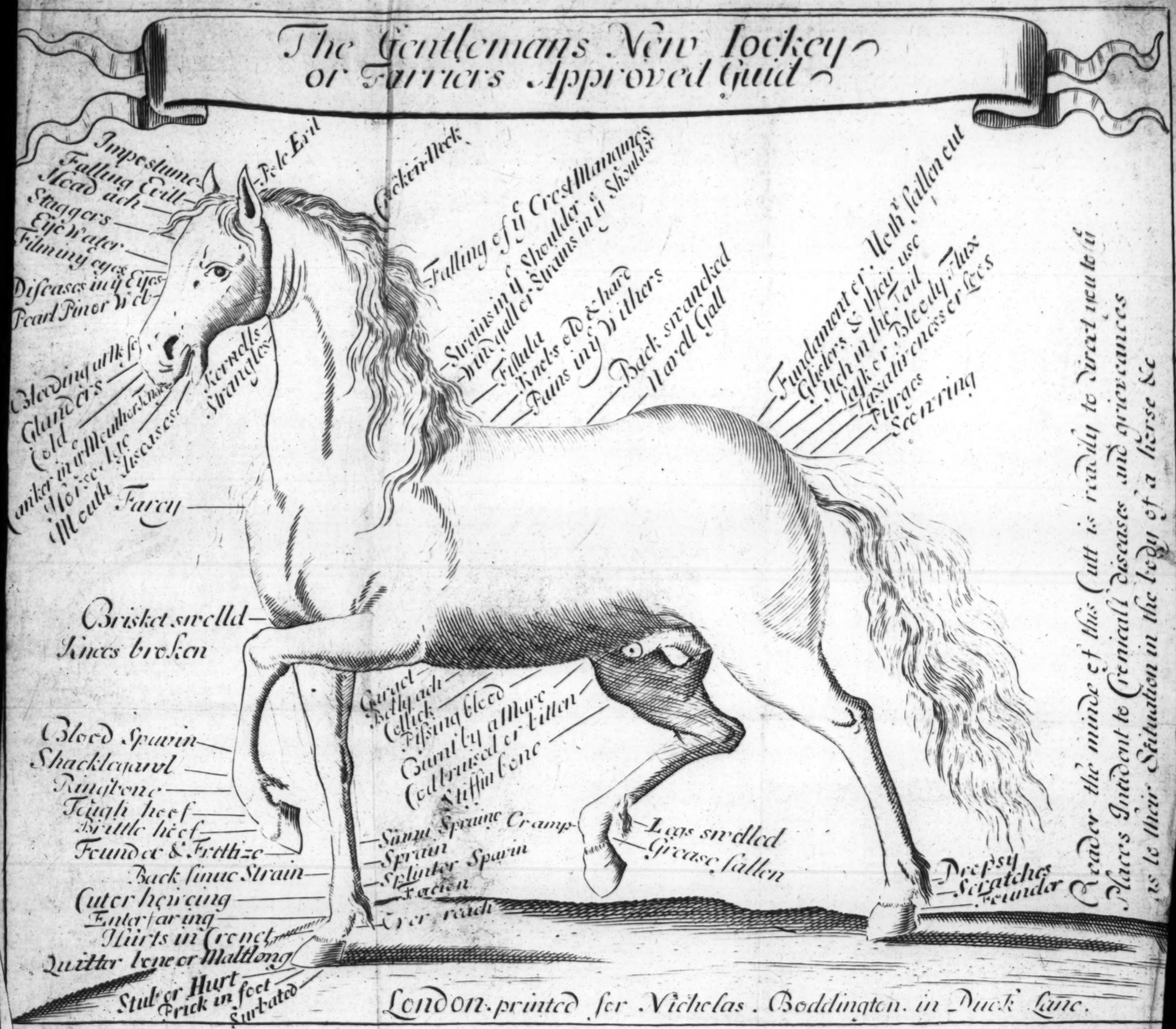
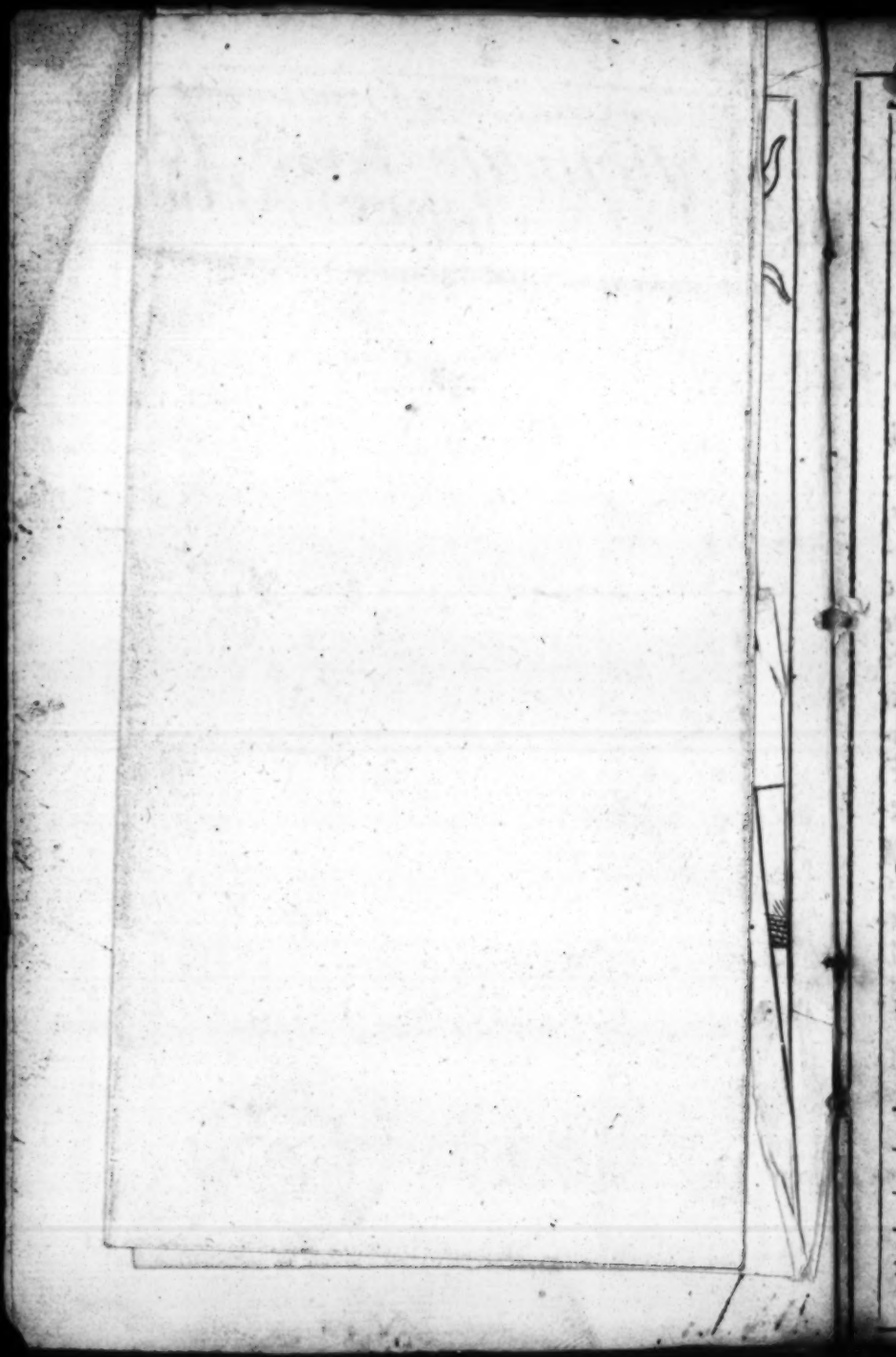

The Gentlemans New Iockey or Farriers Approved Guid
Impostume
Falling Evill
Head ach
Staggers
Eye Water
Filming eyes
Diseases in ye Eyes
Pearl Pinor Web
Bleeding at Nose
Glanders
Cold
Canker in ye Mouth or Tongue
Horse Age
Mouth diseases
Farcy
Kernells
Strangles
Pole Evil
Crickin Neck
Falling of ye Crest Mangines
Strains in ye Shoulder
Windgall or Strains in ye Shoulder
Fistula
Knobs old & hard
Pains in ye Withers
Back swancked
Navell Gall
Fundament or Meth sallen out
Glisters & their use
Itch in the Tail
Lask or Bleedy Flux
Laxativeness or Loos
Pitrges
Scowring
Brisket swelld
Knees broken
Blood Spavin
Shacklegawl
Ringbone
Tough hoof
Brittle hoof
Founder & Frettize
Back sinue Strain
Cuter heweing
Enterfaring
Hurts in Cronet
Quitter bone or Maltlong
Stub or Hurt
Prick in foot
Surbated
Garget
Belly ach
Collick
Pissing bleed
Burnt by a Mare
Cod bruised or bitten
Stiffin bone
Sinnu Spraine Cramp
Sprain
Splinter Spavin
Facion
Over reach
Legs swelled
Grease sallen
Dropsy
Scratches
Founder
Reader the minde of this Cutt is readily to direct you to ye Places Intident to Cronicall diseases and grievances as to their Situation in the body of a horse &c
London. printed for Nicholas. Boddington. in Duck Lane.

UMI - 1994



UMI - 1

THE

Gentleman's New Jockey:

OR,

Farrier's Approved Guide:

Containing the exacteſt Rules and Methods for Breeding and Managing HORSES, in order to bring them up in the beſt manner for Profit, Pleaſure, Service or Recreation; eſpecially in what relates to Racing or Running, Courſing, Travel and War; with Directions for Heats, Dieting, Dreſſing, and the ſeveral Paces requiſite on any of the like Occaſions.

Alſo approved Receipts, and Remedies for all manner of Diſeaſes, Sorrances, Hurts, or Grievances incident to Horſes, according to the Opinions of the beſt Farriers of all Ages. With Directions for preventing Sickneſſes and Griefs, and the Symptoms whereby they are known.

To which is added a Second Part,

Containing many rare and new Secrets, relating as well to Management as Cure, and what elſe may contribute to the Advantage of Buying or Selling; and many other Things and Matters, highly neceſſary to be known by all Lovers of good Horſes.

With a TREATISE for Curing Diſeaſes in Cattel, added this Impreſſion, and divers other rare Experiments.

Illuſtrated with ſundry Curious and Neceſſary CUTS.

The Third Edition, with large Additions.

Licens'd and Enter'd, according to Order.

London: Printed by *W. Onley*, for *Nicholas Boddington*, at the Sign of the Golden-ball, in *Duck-lane*. 1696.

UMI - 1994

Advertiſement.

AN uſeful Concordance to the Holy Bible, with the various Acceptations contain'd in the Scriptures, and Marks to diſtinguiſh Commands, Promiſes, and Threatnings. Alſo a curious Collection of Similes, Synonimous Phraſes, and Prophecies, relating to the Call of the Jews, *and the Glory that ſhall be in the latter days. Laſtly, The Titles, Appellations given to Chriſt and the Church, not in any Concordance yet extant. Begun by the Induſtrious Labour of Mr.* Vavaſor Powel, *and Finiſh'd by Mr.* N. P. *and Mr.* J. F. *Recommended to the Studious Reader, by the Reverend* John Owen, *D. D. The Supplements being plac'd, in this Impreſſion, in their proper Places. The Third Edition, with Additions.* London: *Printed for* Eleanor Smith, *and ſold by* Nicholas Boddington, *at the* Golden-ball *in* Duck-lane. 1696.

THE PREFACE TO THE READER.

Reader,

THough ſundry Perſons of no ſmall Experience, have undertaken to give Mankind an Inſight into the Manner and Method of bringing Horſes to the height of Perfection, in what relates to their Rule and Management on thoſe Occaſions or Services to which they are properly intended or deſigned; as likewiſe to know and diſtinguiſh them in all their Capacities, with Directions for diſcovery and cure of Diſtempers, Grievances and Defects incident to them; yet, let me tell you, there are many things material of that kind that have not as yet been made Publick, all, or moſt of

UMI - 1994

them, ſo neceſſary to be known by the curious Enquirers into this Myſtery, that without knowing them no Man can be an excellent Jockey, or an expert Farrier, nor conſequently have his Judgement approved in any thing material, relating to Horſes or Horſemanſhip. Great indeed have been the Studies and Travel of the Induſtrious of many Kingdoms and Provinces in this Affair, whoſe Labours have worthily found Acceptance: the Conſideration of which has imboldned me to make this Eſſay, hoping it will turn to a general Advantage, being rightly conſidered, put in practice, and applied; ſince that by a more than uſual Curioſity, what has been contained in this, has been ſearched out through all the revealed and (till now) unrevealed Myſteries of this kind, ſo that the Reader may with eaſie proſpect or ſurvey, find out whatſoever he can wiſh, relating to a good Horſe, good Management, knowledge in the Craft, and means to preſerve the Beaſt from a multitude of Infirmities; nay, reſcue him from Death and utter Deſtruction, near and into which, through Neglect or Ignorance, he is fallen, and thereby not only give themſelves Satisfaction in the prolonging the Days and H... ſo noble a Creature for Service and

Em-

UMI - 1

Employment ſundry ways, but always redound to their Profit and Advantage in capacitating them to ſell and diſpoſe of, at a conſiderable Rate, the Horſe that they perhaps deemed loſt and of no Value: In order to which, beſide the Myſtery of Breeding Horſes to the beſt advantage and regard that is to be obſerved in Diet, Dreſſing, and preparing them for Racing, and other the like Undertakings, with habit of Body, knowledge of Goodneſs or Badneſs; and in general and particular, all things of that or any other kind whatſoever that is requiſite to be known, I have ſet down ſuch ready and eaſie Ways and Methods to diſcover Diſeaſes and other Grievances joyntly and ſeverally; as alſo ſpeedily, and with little Charge, Labour, or Trouble to Prevent, Redreſs, or Cure them; that what is written muſt undoubtedly ſatisfie the largeſt Expectation as to things of this nature, or at leaſt give that Satisfaction, that the moſt Penurious or Critical may find enough to make him confeſs that time and coſt were not employed in vain. Some indeed may upon the firſt ſight object againſt the ſmallneſs of this Book, and imagine a Subject ſo copious, allowing ſuch variety, is unlikely to be cramed in ſo narrow a corner: But let me tell them, that

UMI - 1994

when at great Expence and Pains they have ſearched larger Volumes, as alſo in the unpubliſhed Practices of thoſe who are famous at this day, they will find that they have wearied themſelves in vain, in Travelling the longeſt way about, when in all that tedious Progreſs they found nothing material but what is comprehended in this Treatiſe. But not longer to Gloſs upon what is able to ſpeak for itſelf, I ſhall only ſay, that of this kind, nothing exceeds it; and ſo ſubmit it to the Cenſure of the ingenious Reader, and remain,

Your's further to oblige you,

G. E.

To

To his very good Friend, the Ingenious *G. L.* upon the Perusal of his Book, intituled, *The Gentleman's New Jockey*, &c.

SIR, I have view'd the Authors of this kind,
That did pretend or seem'd to this inclin'd;
(This Art I would have said) such as have wrote,
Unskill'd themselves, and would have others taught;
But prove in all their large Pretence Defect,
Either the cause of Weakness or Neglect.
But in the Work you to the World propose,
I find to th' Essence of those numerous those,
Who vainly Built on a Foundation bad;
Which from ill Structures of old Times they had,
You have Additions in strange measure made,
Such as those Ages never knew. So when
Light from the Chaos sprung, those things were seen,
That brooding Darkness spreads her Wings upon,
And long obscur'd beneath her gloomy Throne.
In Epitome, the noble Creature you
Have in Perfection given all his due;
From his beginning to his end, and done
What has in Ages past, attention won
By all the Brave, the Wise, when in a Cloud
It dimly shone; but you remove the Shroud,
And give, unscreen'd, a prospect of what may
Avail Mankind, and your own worth display:
Whilst those who Hunt, who Travel or in War,
At Home seek Fame, or in the Regions far,
Aided by your Advice, as ever free
From Danger great, or Ill-conveniency.
And could a Creature made Irrational,
Arrive to that Discretion which we call
The Sence of Mankind; he far more than they
Would for this Work, a humble Tribute pay,
And at your feet himself an Off'ring lay.

Sir, your's to serve you, J. D.

UMI - 1994

The Contents of the First Part.

Chap. I. *Excellent Rules and Instructions to be observed in the Election and Choice of good Breeders. How and at what time a Mare ought to be Covered; how ordered being with Foal, and after Foaling: with many other things of the like nature.* p. 1

Chap. II. *How to manage a good Colt to bring him to be an excellent Horse, and what is to be observed in the timely knowledge of what he will be when come to Maturity; with the season of Weaning, Cutting, and Usage, &c.* 5

Chap. III. *When and how to Break a Colt and render him tame and gentle; with the Art of Management on that occasion; and other things requisite to be known.* 7

Chap. IV. *The Art of Dressing in general, for bringing a Horse to Perfection, and render a Groom acceptable.* 8

Chap. V. *How to render any tollerable good Horse an excellent Racer; and how Running-horses ought to be managed in Diet, Physick and Exercise.* 9

Chap. VI. *A Continuation of what is to be done to the Running or Race-horse, relating as to his Election, Dressing, Feeding, and other Usage, &c.* 11

Chap. VII. *Heats, what they are, and how to be managed to the best Advantage, in Racing.* 14

Chap. VIII. *Bread of the first Make, and what ought to be observed in the Distribution thereof.* 15

Chap. IX. *Other things to be taken notice of, in regard to the Running-horse, in the second Fortnight.* 17

Chap. X. *The Running-horse's third and fourth Fortnight; and as to Diet, Usage, and bringing him to the Weighing-post.* 19

Chap. XI. *What the Rider ought to be; Backing and good Management; the Office and Duty of a Groom.* 21

Chap. XII. *Infallible Rules for Buying a good Horse; and how so well by sundry Marks and Tokens to distinguish Good from Bad, as well in case of Soundness as Diseases.* 24

Chap.

Chap. XIII. *Infallible Rules to know the Age of a Horſe by his Teeth, in all their particular and general Marks; as alſo by the Tail.* 31

Chap. XIV. *How exactly to know the State and Condition of a Horſe's Body relating to Fatneſs or Leanneſs, Health or Sickneſs.* 34

Chap. XV. *Obſervations to be taken as to the State of a Horſe's body from the privy-parts, limbs, feeding and other matters.* 37

Chap. XVI. *Of the Elementary Parts of a Horſe's Body, and of the Agreement of the Humours therewith. A Diſcourſe of Corruption and Generation, as to Goodneſs or Badneſs, Health or Sickneſs.* 38

Chap. XVII. *How a Horſe ought to be uſed in general and particular, as to his Phyſick, Diet, and looking to.* 41

Chap. XVIII. *An exact Deſcription of the Veins of a Horſe, how ſituate in the Body; as alſo of Bloud-letting; and how, and upon what account of Sickneſs or other Defect, they are to be opened, for the prevention of Death or Danger.* 45

Chap. XIX. *A Diſcourſe of the Sinews and their ſituation, with their uſe and office; and what in that kind is to be obſerved as to the ſtate of a Horſe's body; with a Deſcription of the Bones, &c.* 47

Chap. XX. *Of Bloud-letting in general, and how to know when and where it is convenient to let bloud, for preventing of Sickneſs, or recovery of Health.* 49

Chap. XXI. *A Deſcription of Diſeaſes, Grievances, or Sorrances incident to Horſes; to foreſee them by ſundry Signs and Tokens, and know whence they ariſe; with the Ways and Methods of Preventing, Redreſſing and Curing them, by approved Rules and Remedies.* 52

Chap. XXII. *Excellent Receipts for the Cure of Diſeaſes, &c. in Horſes or Mares, according to the beſt Experience of Skilful Practitioners.* 54

The Glaunders, from what it proceeds, and how to cure it. ibid.

The Quinzey, what it is, and how to cure it. 55

A Horſe's Bleeding at the Noſe, how to ſtay or prevent it. ib.

For Pains in the Teeth or Jaws. 56

The Canker in the Noſe, what it is, and the Remedy. ib.

A Remedy for the Chollick, Belly-ach, or Belly-binding. ib.

The Laske or Bloudy-flax, and its Remedy. ib.

UMI - 1994

The Botts, what they are, and their Cure. 57
For the Shoulder-strain, a goody Remedy. ib.
Broken-wind, what it is, and to remedy it, if not past cure. 58
A Horse burnt by a Mare, how to cure. ib.
For a dry Cough, Cold, Pursiveness, Broken-wind or Shortness of Breath. ib.
To restore decayed and putrified Lungs. 59
A dry Consumption, its Remedy. ib.
The Breast-pain, from whence it proceeds, and how to cure it. 60
Heart-sickness, or Antecor, whence it proceeds, and how to remedy it. ib.
Foundring in the Body, or Surfeiting, how occasioned, together with the Remedy. 61
The Greedy-worm, or Hungry-evil, what it is, and how to be remedied. 62
Yellow and Black-jaundice in a Horse, the cause and cure. ib.
Costiveness, from whence it proceeds, and its Remedy. 63
The Cramp, or Convulsion in the Nerves or Sinews, how occasioned, together with the Remedy. 64
The Mourning of the Chine, its cause and the means to cure it. ib.
Frenzy or Madness, its cause, with the means to remedy it according to the experienced way. 65
The Falling-evil, its cause and cure. ib.
The Sleepy-evil, what it is, and the way to remedy it. 66
The Horse-pestilence, and its cure. ib.
For Chest-foundring, the Remedy. ib.
For an Obstruction in the Bladder, or Windiness in the Bowels, use this approved Medicine. 67
The Pole-evil, how to know and cure. ib.
The Fistula, how to discover and cure. 68
Hard Kernels under the Throat, how to remove them. ib.
For the Navel-gall, the Remedy. 69
For a Blow, Bruise, or the like Misfortune that causes a Swelling or Tumour, the Remedy. ib.
The Scratches, their Remedy. ib.
For Foot-foundring, a Remedy. 70
For the Canker in the Head, a Remedy. ib.
For the Mange, or dry Scurvey, a Remedy. ib.
The Vives, and their Remedy. 71
For Swanking in the Back, or a Strain in the Kidneys, caused by in-

indiscret Riding, or Over-burthening. ib.
For Pains or Foulness in the Reins or Kidneys, an excellent Scowring. 72
Relief for an Attaint or Over-reach on the Heel, or the like. ib.
For the Water-falcion, a Remedy. ib.
A Cure for the Sorrance called the Ring-bone. 73
For the Ives, a Remedy. ib.
To take off the Film or Skin from a Horse's eye. ib.
A Mallender, the Remedy. 74
For the Palsie or Apoplexy, a Remedy. ib.
A Farcim in the Head and Neck to cure. ib.
A Lineament to cleanse a Wound, new or old. ib.
For Kibed-heels, commonly called the Mules, a Remedy. 75
The Quitter-bone, what it is, with its Remedy. ib.
An excellent Cure for the Blood-spavin. 76
For a Neather, Attraint or Over-reach in the Pastern-joynt. ib.
For a Frush the cure. ib.
To dissolve the Humours, and thereby anticipate Diseases. ib.
To soften any hard Swelling or contracted Hardness. 77
For the Splint, Wind-gall, or Bladders of Gelly, in or about any of the Joynts subject thereto. ib.
To cleanse an, putrified or other Sore, the best way. ib.
A Horse Planet-struck, how to cure. ib.
For the Poze, or excessive Cold, a Remedy. 78
To remedy Hideboundness. ib.
For a wet inward Cough, a Remedy. 79
For a dangerous Cough, commonly called the Dry Cough. ib.
For the Yard of a Horse falling, a Remedy. ib.
To prevent the Mattering of the Yard. 80
Of the Diseases incident mostly to Mares, and known by the name of the Pestilent-consumption. ib.
How a Mare that is subject to cast her Foal ought to be used. ib.
How to oblige a Mare to cast her Foal. 81
Of the several Fevers in a Horse, and how to cure them. ib.
For any Disease or Stoppage in the Liver. 83
For a Botch or Sorrance in the Groin of a Horse, a cure. ib.
For a general Mangineſs, the Remedy. ib.
The Barbs, what they are, and how removed. 84
For Blud-shot-eyes, an excellent Remedy. ib.
For any Film, Bite or Blow in the Eye, a Remedy. 85

UMI - 1994

To kill Lice, or remove Flies from offending your Horse. ib.
To rid a Horse from any foulness or disorder in the Body. ib.
For an extraordinary Bruise or Bite. ib.
For a Horse that is troubled with the Strangling, a cure. ib.
To remedy the Swelling of a Horse upon having eaten any infectious thing in his Provender, that may prove dangerous. 86
For a Heart-burning or Wasting occasioned thereby. ib.
To prevent staling bloud, a Remedy. ib.
Another Remedy for the Farcy, vulgarly called the Fashon. ib.
An approved Cure for any Sinew-strain or Over-reach. ib.
Diseases in the Hoof how to remedy; and first for a Horse, that upon sundry occasions is apt to cast his Hoof. 87
Hoof-bound; what it is, and how to remedy it. ib.
To soften or harden the Hoof, the best way. 88
To harden a Hoof as occasion requires. ib.
For any hurt or cankerous Sore in or on the Hoof. ib.
To oblige a Horse to carry his Ears well, the way. 89
For the Grievance called the Frounce, *a cure.* ib.
For a Heat, which sometimes occasions a breaking out in the mouth and lips, the cure. ib.
Woolf-teeth what they are, and how to ease their Pains. ib.
To stanch any Bleeding, a speedy way. 90
To supply the defect of the falling of the Crest, a Remedy. ib.
To cure Mangineſs, or the like Disorder in the Crest. ib.
The Navel-gall, what it is, and its Remedy. 91
For a Sitfast, or horney Excrescence under the Saddle, whereby the Horse is disabled from carrying it in good order as he ought. ib.
For any Knob or Wen near the Saddle-skirt, or the Sides of the Horse, a Remedy. ib.
For Weakneſs in the Back, a strengthening Remedy. ib.
For the Swelling in the Cods of a Horse naturally, or occasioned by any Bruise. 92
For Burstenness, or the Rupture in a Horse. ib.
The Art of discovering hidden Griefs or Ailments in a Horse, and from whence they proceed. 93
The Bone-spavin, what it is, &c. ib.
For a Haw in the Eye. 94
For the falling of the Fundament, a Remedy. ib.
To preserve a Hoof from decaying. ib.
Interfering, what it is, and the Remedy. ib.

A false Quarter, what it is. 95
The Melt on the Heel. ib.
An excellent Remedy for any Strain or Swelling. ib.
How to remedy the harm done a Horse by unadvisedly and unskilfully letting Bloud. ib.
For the Leprosie in Horses, a Remedy. 96
For any Disease in the Lungs, an excellent Remedy. ib.
For the Swelling of the Horse's Legs, a cure. 97
The Flying-worm, what it is, and how to cure it. ib.
Excellent Directions for the preventing of Diseases in Horses, at sundry times, &c. 98
A Cure for a sore or defective Mouth. 99
For the Mellet in the Heels, a cure. ib.
The Stavers, their signs, cause and cure. 100
For the Stone, a Remedy. ib.
To take away a Wen in the Neck or any part of the Body. ib.
The Crownet-scab, what it is, together with the cure. 101
To draw out a Thorn or Stump, or any Iron or sharp thing gotten into the Flesh. ib.
Strain in the Coffin-joynt or Socket of the hoof. ib.
For a Horse that is perpetually sick and out of order, by retaining a spice of former Surfeits. 102
For a Cold in the Summer when the Horse is defective in filling, or by too rank feeding. ib.
A Through-splint or Screw-pin, what it is, and the cure. 103
To render a brittle Hoof firm and serviceable. ib.
To cure the Anbury. ib.
To prevent a Horse's pissing bloud, an excellent Remedy. ib.
For a broken Knee, the Remedy. ib.
For the Dropsie. 104
To joyn a Sinew that is out. ib.
For a Wound or Hurt in the Tongue, a Remedy. ib.
For the Itch in the Tail, or any other part. ib.
Another excellent Remedy for a Tetter. 105
For a Hurt or Wring in the Withers. ib.
Worms of any sort in the Body of a Horse, how to kill them. ib.
A Salve for any sort of Wound, how to make and apply it. ib.
An Impostbume, to ripen or cure. 106
For any Internal Sickness, another good Remedy, never before published. ib.

UMI - 1994

For the Ach, Weakneſs and Numbneſs of the Joynts. ib.
How to ſtay any violent Loſneſs. 107
The Lampas, what it is, and how to cure it. ib.
The Fig in the foot of a Horſe, the cure. ib.
The Flanks, a Diſeaſe ſo called, and the way to remedy it. 108
The Shackle-gall, and its cure. ib.
A Horſe that is gravelled, how to remedy. ib.
Of Cataplaſms or Poultiſes. 109
For any Swelling, Impoſthume, Rankling, Wound or broken Bone, a Cataplaſm or Poultiſe. ib.
For a Swelling in the Throat or under the Ears. ib.
To draw or break a Boil or Ulcerous Sore. ib.
An excellent Poultiſe to aſſwage any Pain or Tumour. ib.
A Poultiſe to break any infectious Sore. 110
To diſperſe the Flux or Oppreſſion of Blood in any part. ib.
Impoſthume or ſudden Swelling in any part of the Body. ib.
In caſe of the Palſey in the head, (a Diſeaſe ſeldom happening in Horſes) a Poultiſe. ib.
Rare and New Experiments. 111
To heal and contract any Wound. ib.
An inward Balm to deſtroy Worms, and heal Internal Bruiſes. ib.
An excellent Balm in caſe of any Sprain, Internal Bruiſe, Swelling, old Sore or Gun-ſhot. ib.
An excellent Balm to be given a Horſe inward, in caſe of a Conſumption. ib.
An excellent Red Water to cure Ulcers. 112
An excellent Water to allay any Internal Heat or Feaverish Indiſpondency. ib.
In caſe a Horſe be troubled with the Stone, an excellent Water. ib.
For any Diſeaſe in the Eyes, another excellent Water, &c. ib.
An excellent Purgation for Gravel in the Bladder or Kidneys. 113
For the Ulceration of the Yard, an excellent Water. ib.
An excellent Powder for the Falling-ſickneſs or Falling-evil in a Horſe, &c. ib.
A Powder for the Ague, which frequently happens, eſpecially to young Horſes. ib.
To Purge Choler and Flegm, an excellent Remedy. ib.
An excellent Bath to allay any Swelling, or ſuch-like Diſorder, eſpecially Diſeaſes in the Legs, occaſioned by the deſcending of evil

evil Humours. 114
A Bath to ſoften and mollifie the Skin. ib.
To ſtanch Blood in any Vein or Artery. ib.
An excellent Medicament to provoke a Horſe to Vomit, as alſo to purge the Belly ib.
An excellent Purge, good on ſundry occaſions. ib.
For a Joynt-ſickneſs. 115
For an Internal Ulcer. ib.
An excellent Electuary for a dangerous Cough or rattling Cold. ib.
Chap. XXIII. *The Symptoms of Diſeaſes,* &c. *in general and particular, how to foreſee them, and prevent them; as alſo to know when they happen,* &c. 116
Chap. XXIV. *Directions for Making and Preparing Oyntments, Oyls, Salves, Waters, Purgations, Poultiſes, Charges, Supplements, Pills, Powders,* &c. *ſingular good in caſe of any Diſtemper or Sorrance; many of them never before made publick.* 119
An Oyntment to ſearch any Wound or Ulcerated Sore, or any thing of the like nature. ib.
An Oyntment excellent good in caſe of Botches, Boyls, Scabs, or the like. ib.
To skin any Wound, an excellent Oyntment. ib.
To mollifie and aſſwage any Swelling, an excellent Oyntment. 120
An excellent Oyntment to cool and allay any Inflammation. ib.
An excellent Oyntment, or rather Balſam to be inwardly given a Horſe for Obſtructions, Bruiſes, and other Ailments and Grievances. ib.
To make a green Oyntment, proved by Experience more effectual than what has formerly been publiſhed. ib.
An excellent Remedy for the Staggers or any Pain that ſuddenly takes a Horſe, ſometimes to the loſs of his life. 121
An excellent Salve for any Wound. ib.
An approved Salve, to draw any Stub, Thorn, or Splinter of Bone or Wood out of the Fleſh. ib.
To fill a Wound, Ulcer or the like with good fleſh, a Plaiſter. ib.
A Salve to draw Corruption from the bottom of any Wound, or to draw a Swelling, or any ſuch Grievance to a head. 122
To ripen any Tumour or aſſwage any Swelling not abounding with extraordinary Humours. ib.
An excellent Poultiſe for a Tumour or Swelling. ib.

UMI - 1994

A Charge to ease a Pain in the Back, or for any Sprain. ib.
To mollifie any Chap or rough Sore. ib.
For the Eyes of a Horse afflicted by any means, an approved Water to cure or ease them. ib.
A Water to wash the Mouth in case of any Sorrance or Defect. 123
A Pill good for any Internal Disorder. ib.
A Supplement exceeding good for any Strain or Grief in the Sinews. ib.
A Vomit for a Horse that has a queesy stomach, thereby to render him a good appetite. ib.
To purge Melancholly. ib.
To purge Phlegm. ib.
Chap. XXV. *Clysters, how to make them, and on what occasion they ought to be applied in order to their effectual working and bringing away bad Humours.* 124
In case of any Pestilential Disease, occasioned by a cholerick or fiery Humour. ib.
For any Internal Distemper proceeding from Melancholly. ib.
For any Distemper Internal, occasioned by sanguine corrupt Bloud, or watry Humours, by means of bad Concoction or Obstruction, &c. ib.
For Sickness in general, an approved Clyster. ib.
In case of Restringency or hard Binding. ib.
Chap. XXVI. *Cordials, Cordial-pills, Drinks, and Drenches, Purgations and Suppositories, wonderfully conducing to the health and strength of a Horse.* 126
Diapente, *an excellent Powder in case of any Cold or Pestilemial Disease.* ib.
An excellent Cordial-ball to be given in case of any Internal Distemper, and especially to prevent the consumption or wasting any part. ib.
An excellent Drench to cure any Internal Distemper proceeding from any of the four Humours of the Body, &c. *especially such as are Pestilential.* 127
Suppositories, and their Use. ib.
Chap. XXVII. *Perfumes, Baths and Purgations, what they are, and to what end they serve; with the manner how, and under what considerations they ought to be applied.* 128
Directions for Purging, according to the estate and condition of your Horse. 129

Chap.

The CONTENTS.

Chap. XXVIII. *Costicks, Corrosives and Rowelling; what they are, for what cause, and in what manner to be applied.* 130
Rowelling, what it is, and how to be performed. 131

The Contents of the Second Part.

THE manner of Breaking a Horse the best way, and Perfecting him in his Paces, &c. and preserving him from Danger, &c. 135
Chap. II. *How the Jockies make old Horses look young; a lean Horse artificially and naturally, how fatned by Jockies. A Remedy for Restiffuess, Neighing, and the Vice of Lying down in the Water; the Art of making Stars, Snips, Blazes, setting on false Ears, Tails, Manes, &c. with a discovery of many other Secrets.* 142
To make a Horse that is really old, seem young. ib.
A Horse subject to lie down in the Water, how to remedy it. 143
A Tired or Restiff Horse, to remedy. ib.
To prevent the troublesomness of a Horse's Neighing, which may prove disadvantagious to the Master, especially in the time of War. 144
If a Horse be dull, and will not feel the Spur without much wounding, take the following Directions to make him go very nimble with or without a Spur. ib.
To make a lean Horse artificially fat, or to seem so to the Buyer. ib.
To make a lean Horse really fat, the best and cheapest way. 145
To make the Hair of a Horse, that stands rough and staring, smooth and sleek. ib.
To make Hair come where it is thin, or take it away where it is thick. 146
Stars, Blazes, Snips, what they are, and how to make them for Ornament or Disguise in any part of the Horse where it may be conveniently situate. ib.
To make a Black Star, Blaze, or Snip, in a White Horse. 147
To make a Blaze-Royal. 149
The loss of Ears, how to supply. ib.
Chap. III. *How to set a Horse off for Sale to the best Advantage, by Trimming, Washing, &c. as also Directions for the Manage-*
ment

UMI - 1994

ment of a Horſe in Hunting, relating to his Leaping, &c. with other things and matters worthy of note. 151
How to make a Ball, wherewith a Horſe being well lathered and ſmoothed down, ſhall look exceeding ſleek and comely. ib.
How to manage a Horſe in Leaping, taking a Hedge, Gate, Stile, or Ditch, &c. 152
Chap. IV. What the Stable to keep a good Horſe in ought to be; and how he ought to be regarded; the Hoofs how to be corrected and mended in Shooing, and upon other occaſions. 154
Critical Days, and the Obſervations thereon. 158
Some further Conſiderations upon the Cauſe of Diſeaſes, and how to remove them, Phyſically diſcuſſed, &c. 159
The Spirits, what they are, with their Office, &c. 160
A further Deſcription of the External Parts, &c. ib.

The Contents of the Third Part.

HOw to know if a Beaſt be ſound or not, as alſo to know if an Ox or a Cow be ſound or whole of Body. 163
How to Fat an Ox. 164
An order or courſe how to Fat Oxen in the Stall. 165
How a Man may be rightly informed for to Buy and Sell Oxen. 167
How to keep a Cow that is great-bellied with Calf. 169
Of a Cow that wants Milk, having but lately Calved. ib.
A good way to Cut or Geld a Calf. ib.
To Rear and for to Breed Calves for Increaſe. 170
To help the Garget in the Throat of a Beaſt. 171
To Cure the Garget on the Tongue. ib.
Againſt the Garget coming by any Puſh. 172
Againſt the Garget in the Maw ib.
To Kill Lice and Ticks in Cattel. ib.
For the Murrain in Cattle. 173
For the Flux or Lasks. ib.
For the Lasks, or Ray in Calves, or Cough in young Bullocks or Heifers. ib.
For Scalds or Mangineſs. ib.
For any Diſtemper in the Lungs. ib.
For Piſſing Blood. ib.

For the Taint and Gargets. ib.
For ſtoppage of Urine. 174
For any poiſonous Infection, or pain in the Belly, ſwelling or internal Bruiſe. ib.
For the Sperenges and Staggers. ib.
For being Hide-bound, which hinders the Growth of Cattle. ib.
For the Feaver in Cattle. ib.
To Cure Halting. ib.
To Cure the Swelling in Cattle by breaking into freſh Paſture, and over-feeding, or by licking up ſome venomous Matter. ib.
For any Blain, or outward Sorrance. 175
For the Pains in the Bowels. ib.
For the Quinzy. ib.

Of Rams, Ewes and Lambs, &c.

To chuſe good Breeders for the increaſe of Sheep. ib.
The beſt time of Covering. ib.
How, after Caſting, to order your Lambs. ib.
For the Scab or Mange. 176
For bruiſed Joynts, broken Claws, &c. ib.
For the Rot or Plague. 177
For any Diſeaſe in the Lungs of Sheep. ib.
For the Head-ach, or pains in the Head of Sheep. ib.
In caſe of Rheums, Catarrhs, or Coughs. ib.
For the Plague and Rot, another. ib.
For Boils, Apoſthumes, or Ulcers, that are not come to a head. ib.
For Scabs, or Breaking out of that nature. ib.
For Purſiveneſs. 178
For St. Anthony's *Fire.* ib.
To ſupple broken Joynts, Sprains, Wrenches and fractured Bones. ib.
For Lameneſs, which is occaſioned by too much Wool growing in the fleſhy part of their Feet. ib.

Of Swine, their Breeding, Ordering, &c.

How to have a good Breed of Swine. ib.
To cure Pains in the Head or Teeth. 179
For the Head-ach, or Sleepy-evil. ib.
An Approved Remedy for the Meaſles. ib.

UMI - 1994

For the Swine-Pox. 180
For Rheums, or Catarrhs. ib.
For the Plague, or any Disease in the Melt. ib.
To Cure the Flux. ib.
For the Belly-ach. ib.
For the Diseases in the Eyes of Swine. ib.

For Killing of Vermine.

To Kill Rats and Mice. 181
To make Rats and Mice Blind. ib.
To drive away Rats and Mice from a House or other place. ib.
To gather together all the Rats and Mice into one place in a House or Barn, and to kill them. ib.
To Catch Moles. 182
To Kill Moles. ib.
To Kill Weasles. ib.
To prevent Weasles from sucking of Eggs. ib.
To drive the Snakes and Adders out of the Garden. ib.
To Kill Snakes and Adders. ib.
To Kill Pismires. ib.
To preserve Plants from the Pismires. ib.
To drive away Pismires. ib.
To Kill Bugs. 183
To Kill Fleas. ib.
To Kill Lice. ib.
To Kill Crab-lice. ib.
For Nits and Lice in the Head. ib.
To Kill Caterpillars. ib.
To Kill Flies. 184
To gather the Flies together. ib.
To keep Cattle from Injuries by Flies. ib.
The Art of taking Fish. ib.
To take all sorts of Birds, Fowls, &c. ib.

THE

eman's New Jockey:

OR,

IER's Approved Guide.

CHAP. I.

es and Instructions to be observed in the d Choice of good Breeders. How and e, &c. a Mare ought to be Covered; l being with Foal, and after Foaling: other things of the like nature.

N any Gentleman or other Person is desi- us of a good Breed of Horses or Mares, that y redound to his Pleasure and Profit, the ef thing is to Elect a Stallion and Mare or Nature has not been defective, but ra- amed for Beauty, and promising Service of what ... r, shall be premeditated or proposed by the Master: and in this case Instructions, how unerringly to chuse such as may answer the largest expectation, will not be amiss; for as the Sire and Dam are, such will the Colts prove.

Those that have been Curious in these Matters, generally agree, That the Mare for breed ought to be about four Years old, altogether free from Diseases and Sorran-

For the Swine-Pox.
For Rheums, or Catarrhs.
For the Plague, or any Diſeaſe in the Melt.
To Cure the Flux.
For the Belly-ach.
For the Diſeaſes in the Eyes of Swine.

For Killing of Vermine.

To Kill Rats and Mice.
To make Rats and Mice Blind.
To drive away Rats and Mice from a Houſe or other p
To gather together all the Rats and Mice into one pl
or Barn, and to kill them.
To Catch Moles.
To Kill Moles.
To Kill Weaſles.
To prevent Weaſles from ſucking of Eggs.
To drive the Snakes and Adders out of the Garden.
To Kill Snakes and Adders.
To Kill Piſmires.
To preſerve Plants from the Piſmires.
To drive away Piſmires.
To Kill Bugs.
To Kill Fleas.
To Kill Lice.
To Kill Crab-lice.
For Nits and Lice in the Head.
To Kill Caterpillars.
To Kill Flies.
To gather the Flies together.
To keep Cattle from Injuries by Flies. ib.
The Art of taking Fiſh. ib.
To take all ſorts of Birds, Fowls, &c.

THE

THE
Gentleman's New Jockey:
OR,
FARRIER's Approved Guide.

CHAP. I.

Excellent Rules and Inſtructions to be obſerved in the Election and Choice of good Breeders. How and at what time, &c. *a Mare ought to be Covered; how ordered being with Foal, and after Foaling: With many other things of the like nature.*

WHEN any Gentleman or other Perſon is deſirous of a good Breed of Horſes or Mares, that may redound to his Pleaſure and Profit, the chief thing is to Elect a Stallion and Mare or Mares, in whom Nature has not been defective, but rather fitted and framed for Beauty, and promiſing Service of what kind ſoever, ſhall be premeditated or propoſed by the Maſter: And in this caſe Inſtructions, how unerringly to chuſe ſuch as may anſwer the largeſt expectation, will not be amiſs; for as the Sire and Dam are, ſuch will the Colts prove.

Thoſe that have been Curious in theſe Matters, generally agree, That the Mare for breed ought to be about four Years old, altogether free from Diſeaſes and Sorran-

ces, clear limbed and well-proportioned, her Eyes lively and ſparkling, ſtanding ſomewhat out of her Head, her Ears ſtanding direct, her Buttocks broad and well fleſhed, with a large Womb, little Head, well-ſet Shoulders, and an arched Neck; her Legs even, and her Neighing ſharp and clear, with fair Hoofs and large Ribs, one that is not uſed to trip, ſtumble, interfere, or given to any untowardly Vice. And, to anſwer her, the Stallion ought to have a little Head, inclining to leanneſs, a ſwelling Forehead, full Ears, with Eyes quick and ſtanding out, being ſomewhat ſpeckled with Blood, his Noſe crook'd, or bending, his Noſtrils wide, and Neck arch-wiſe, with a large Thropple and curling Mane, broad and well-ſet Shoulders, large Knee-joynts and lean Legs, a well-ſet Cheſt, broad Back, large Ribs, a gaunt Belly, Straits, Fillets, and good Paſterns well knit and well proportioned; of Colour bright Bay or Cole black; tho' in this caſe other Colours may prove good, both as to the Mare and Stallion, as will appear when I come to deſcribe the Goodneſs by the Colour, *&c.*

A good choice thus made, it will be altogether convenient to feed your Stallion for a time in the Stable with heartning Provender, as Splent-beans, Oats, or ſod Barley, to render him luſty and mettleſome; yet let him feed on good green Paſture, at leaſt a day before you ſuffer him to back your Mare, for fear that by reaſon of the ſtiffneſs of his Limbs and purſiveneſs, he break his Wind, by overſtraining himſelf in the Action. If the Mare who muſt be ſuffered to Run in good warm Paſture, appear averſe, and by her ſtriking, or otherways ſeeming unwilling, decline the company of the Stallion, then will it be convenient to put ſome little Stone Nag to wooe her, taking away the Stallion; and when he has brought her to a compliance, take him away without ſuffering him to leap her, and bring the Stallion to her again about Sun-riſe, the Ground being well fenced about, and, no doubt, ſhe will ſuffer herſelf to be Covered; and if the Horſe be very headſtrong and unruly, it will not be amiſs if two ſtrong Men lead him to her, and manage him according to their diſcretion, for fear he injure himſelf or the Mare: Then let a third ſtand ready with a Bucket of Water to caſt upon the

Mare

Mare's Shape with all his force, ſo ſoon as the Horſe diſmounts her, thereby to make her ſhrink up her Body, and ſuddenly cloſe the Womb for the better retention of the Seed, and in fifteen days after, if you imagine ſhe has not thorowly conceived, which will appear by her turning her back part to the Wind, pricking up her Ears often, ſcenting the Air and Neighing, you may put the Horſe to her again, and order her in the like manner; but if the Mare be notwithſtanding defective in Conception, to remedy that fault, occaſioned moſtly by too much Blood, take a Pint of Blood from either ſide her Neck four or five days before your Horſe covers her; and the day after bleeding, Take a Quart of warm Milk, half a Pint of the Juyce of Mugwort, *London*-Treacle and ſweet Butter, of each two Ounces, diſſolve them together; and, being well mixed, give them to her in a Drenching horn luke-warm, and you ſhall find the effects anſwer your expectation, eſpecially if twice or thrice repeated the ſucceeding Mornings when ſhe is faſting: Now, if ſhe has conceived well, her Belly within four or five days will appear gaunt, her Hair more bright and ſhining, her regard of Horſes or Noiſes will be little, her Ears will flag, and ſhe will decreaſe in fleſh. Ways there are to oblige either Stallion or Mare, in caſe of Averſeneſs, by rubbing a Spunge in the Mare's Shape, and with it rubbing the Horſe's Noſe; as likewiſe by rubbing the Shape of the Mare with *Aqua-vitæ*, Cow-itch, Nettle-ſeed, or the like. But theſe being vulgarly known, I ſhall wave them, and proceed to what is more material to be known.

Some are of opinion, that knitting the right Stone of the Horſe with a Liſt or ſilken Cord, will occaſion a Female Colt, and the contrary a Male; but how often that has failed, there are few Horſe-keepers ignorant: Wherefore, to follow Experience, the beſt Miſtreſs, obſerve, that if you would be ſure of a Stone-Colt, to let your Mare be covered when *Aries*, *Taurus*, *Gemini*, *Cancer* or *Leo*, are predominant, which are called Maſculine Signs, and as well rule Irrational as Rational Creatures; and if your deſires are contrary, then let *Virgo*, *Libra*, *Scorpio*, *Sagittarius*, *Capricorn*, *Aquaries* and *Piſces* be your Rule: For as Heat and Moiſture are the great diſtinguiſhers of the Sex, ſo the

Signs influencing more or leſs, are not a little concerned as Second Cauſes in the production of things participating of their Temperature.

For the ſpace of three Weeks, or ſomewhat longer, after Covering, ſhe muſt or ought to be kept in a warm Houſe and Dieted, leſt the Conception happen to be impaired before the Colt be well formed; and after that, ſhe muſt not be hard rid nor laboured, neither come into any Ground or Stable where unruly Cattle are, or where, by attempting to leap, ſhe may injure herſelf, leſt thereby her Maſter's expectation be fruſtrated by Miſcarriage, or the Colt's being bruiſed and diſtorted in the Womb; obſerving the Ground ſhe runs in be dry, well ſheltered with ſpreading Trees, Barns, Quick-ſets, or Out-houſes, under or into which ſhe may retire at leaſure; nor will it be unneceſſary to have Racks with Provender placed where ſhe may advantagiouſly come at them.

The time that a Mare goes with Fold, unleſs ſome miſchance happen, is by the moſt curious Obſervers a year and ten days, though ſome will have it twelve months within eleven days, and ſome a ſhorter time: This, I confeſs, as to a young Mare, in her firſt Teaming, does often fall out; but upon the ſecond Foaling, rarely or never: For if your Mare be covered about the middle of *December*, which is the beſt time, ſhe may have the advantage of the Summer to run in, and the following Spring to bring up her Colt; ſhe will be ſure to Foal about the latter end of *December* in the following year, as has been frequently obſerved. When the time of her Foaling is at hand, let thoſe whoſe charge it is, be aſſiſting to her in caſe of Emergency, ſhe being continued in a warm Houſe without any Halter or other cumberſome thing about her, whereby ſhe may be hindred, or cauſed to ſlip or ſtumble, being eaſed in her lying down with clean Litter, or laying, to receive the Colt, if ſhe caſt it ſtanding, as often it happeneth; and when ſhe has dryed the Colt with licking, let the Milk be drawn from her Teats before it be ſuffered to ſuck her, to prevent its clotting in the Udder; and if ſhe be ſcanty of Milk, to prevent dryneſs and encreaſe it, give her warm Maſhes, with ſome Powder of Brimſtone and

Wa

Water, wherein Scabeous or Vervine have been boiled, anointing her Dugs with the Decoction of Lavender and Spike; and ſo a month or two after you may work or ride her gently; but beware if ſhe return hot, let her cool before the Colt take the Teat, leſt the humours being too much ſtirred, the heat of the Milk being too greedily taken, ſurfeit him: and thus a good Mare will bring forth able Colts till ten years, and a Stallion get them till twelve; but thoſe that on either part happen beyond, will prove Weaklings, and not worth the Rearing. And thus much for procuring a Colt; which, if carefully reared, will unqueſtionably make a good Horſe or Mare.

CHAP. II.

How to manage a good Colt to bring him to be an excellent Horſe, and what is to be obſerved in the timely knowledge of what he will be when come to Maturity; with the Seaſon of Weaning, Cutting, and Uſage, &c.

THE firſt thing neceſſary to know, whether a Colt will make a Horſe, and when arrived to Maturity, is the Obſervation of his Lineaments; the Meaſures in that kind to be taken thus: *Viz.* Obſerve whether the Shin-bones be ſtrait and even, of a convenient thickneſs, according to a durable or firm proportion, that thereby his tallneſs and ability may be perſpicuous or apparent; for in conſideration of the proportion between the Withers and the Knee you may expect a duplicity, or as much more in the height, when at full growth: Obſerve likewiſe that his Joynts be large, and that he be full boned, his Head ſmall, lean, and his Ears of a moderate ſize ſtanding upright; and that when he ſtands in due proportion or at eaſe, his hinder Legs ſtand rather backward, than crimpling forward, or even, which denotes ſpeed; then conſider by his friſking or playing up and down, his ſhaking his Ears or Tail, ſtaring in your face, or the like, his mettleſomneſs, and conſe-

quently thereby his other Properties, as far as his tender Age will give an insight; for in this Creature, as in all others of what kind soever, there remains no certainty without Industry, as to the reducing them to the Service of Mankind: And to prevent his pining when weaned, let him by all means be out of the hearing of his Dam; and that he may the better brook her absence, make a mixture of the best Butter you can get, and Rhubarb, Rue, or Savine, and give him nourishing Diet; as Mashes, Splent-beans, boiled Oats and hot Bran, with somewhat that is green and juicey, for the space of three Months after: Nor indeed ought he to be used to hard Provender altogether, till three Years after his weaning, lest thereby he be induced to neglect his feeding, and so by pining hinder his growth and activity.

If it be a Stone-Colt, separate him from that of the other Kind at the expiration of a Year, lest he spoil himself in attempting what he is not capable of performing; and the better to prevent the endangering of either, is to put them into indifferent Pasture, well fenced, to prevent leaping, and secured by Quick-sets, Trees, Barns or other Out-houses from heat and cold.

If you design to make Geldings of your Stone-Colts, the proper time to Cut or Dilapidate them is, when they are between nine and twelve Days old, if the Sign of Life, which may be gathered from the Course of the Moon in her Wain, being either in *Aries* or *Virgo*, especially in the Spring or Fall, which are accounted the safest Seasons; tho', by those who well understand this Affair, it may be done at any time, the Weather being dry, and not too hot or cold.

And what now remains as to the bringing a Colt to perfection, is the Art of the Breeder, which may be, as the vulgar term has it, the principal Verb; for if he neglect his Charge, all that has been mentioned may prove ineffectual; which Breeder I also term the Manager; for it is not enough to feed a Horse well, that thereby he may be able-limbed and high-metled, but to bring him up to those degrees of Exercise, that may fit him for any Imployment.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

When and how to break a Colt and render him tame and gentle; with the Art of Management on that occasion: and other things requisite to be known.

WHen your Colt comes to be of the Age of five Years, which is a good time to oblige him to endure Backing, or the like, having before made your self familiar with him, by stroaking, feeding, and shaking the Bridle at his head, laying your hand on his back, smacking the Whip or cheriping, with such other signs as are commonly used to create a sufferance; lay your Saddle, not being over-weighty, on his Back, continuing, as you observe his patience, either to encrease the weight by a greater Saddle, or by placing on the lesser somewhat that is ponderous, stroaking and rubbing him the mean while, that he may not be intent on what you are doing; and when you have brought him to a moderate sufferance, girt the Saddle with soft Girths, and that by degrees, loosning them as you find occasion, by his winching and untowardness, or straitning them according to his patience or sufferance: And so in case of your Bridle, which ought to be the second thing applicable in reducing a Colt or young Horse to obedience and observance of what tends to his Accomplishment; but if you perceive a Colt, before he arrive at any convenient maturity, to be over-mettlesome, it will be prudent to make him familiar, tho' at a Year old, yet not to press his Back with Weights, for fear of swaying it; and so by a timely taming him, render the Men of other Nations mistaken, who account the *Spanish*, *Turkey*, *Barbary*, *Peloponesian*, *Flanders*, *Friesland*, *Holland* and *Artois* Horses and Mares the best; and the reason that they give is, That they may be made gentle at any Age; which the *English* Horses, *&c.* whom they term of a stubborn Nature, cannot be brought to: And indeed the taking of them up too soon, without due management, is the occasion of stunting, and other ways spoiling, of many a brave Colt or Horse.

If you find your Endeavour in the manner aforeſaid fai you in bringing a young Horſe or Mare to your bent, then conſider Loanlineſs may be the occaſion, or Fear more than Obſtinacy: To remedy which, oblige him or her to accompany thoſe that are tame, and of a gentle nature, already reduced to what you deſign them, or at leaſt flexible on that occaſion; and by often obſerving you handle them, a mildneſs will be created, and a familiarity will increaſe to a deſire of the like; nor will moderate Rubbing and Picking the Feet be the leaſt means to introduce what elſe you deſire. Some indeed, and thoſe the moſt curious in this Affair, will not attempt to Back a Horſe which they intend for Travel or Racing till the ſixth Year; but, in my opinion, they loſe a Year's Service thereby to no manner of purpoſe; for the indifference as to the one and the other in this kind, is inconſiderable, unleſs in caſe of extraordinary Labour; for conſequently the longer the Horſe remains in good Feeding undiſturbed, the ſtronger he grows in Joynt and Member, tho' leſs in Swiftneſs.

CHAP. IV.

The Art of Dreſſing in general, for bringing a Horſe to Perfection, and render a Groom acceptable.

AS the old Proverb is, *The Eye of the Maſter maketh the Horſe fat*; ſo his care in this caſe is neceſſary (if he cannot be preſent as he would wiſh) to chuſe ſuch a one, who may as well in his abſence as in his preſence, perform his Duty to the benefit of his Maſter and his own credit, by riſing early and tending the Horſe or Horſes within his charge; and the beſt Diet in this caſe to bring him to perfection is, in general, a Quart of Splent-beans, and two Quarts of Oats ſweet and well ſifted; and ſo, if more than one, the like quantity; then Curry him well with an Iron Comb; after that, Duſt him over with a Duſting-cloth, and paſs a French Bruſh upon him, and ſmooth him with your Hands to ſleekneſs, paſſing over him beſide a Wool-

Woolen, and then Linnen-cloth, cleanſing his Eyes, Ears, Sheath, and picking his Feet, placing his Mane decently, and ſmoothing his Forehead after its being ruffled, to looſen the Skin; when, putting on the Saddle, with Wiſps under the Girths, ride him gently to Water, ſuffering him to dung or ſtale as you ſee him inclined; and in caſe of defect, provoke him thereto, by letting him ſcent Horſe-dung, muſty Hay, caſt Straw, or entring into Stubble or Brakes; and ſo in a gentle motion return him to your Stable, which ought rather to be Paved than Planked, to prevent dampneſs and unwholſome ſcents ariſing from the Urine, *&c.* that ſtagnates between the creviſes or chinks of the Plank, be they laid never ſo cloſe; of which I ſhall ſay more, when I come to give Directions for a convenient Stable, fitting for choice Horſes.

Your Horſe being in the Stable, rub him down in all Points, as before directed, ever obſerving to begin at the Head, and ſo proceed backwards, till every part be decently paſſed over, not taking off the Cloaths, or removing the Bridle under the ſpace of an hour, and in the mean while let him have the ſame quantity of Provender as before, adding, as he has diſpatched the Grain, a Bottle of ſweet Hay, bound up hard and caſt into the Rack, that with ſome labour he may pull it thence. Theſe are General Rules and no way to be contemned.

CHAP. V.

How to render any tollerable good Horſe an excellent Racer; and how Running Horſes ought to be managed in Diet, Phyſick and Exerciſe.

SEeing Racing is highly in eſteem, and a good Horſe of that kind much covered by the Gentry of all Nations, I ſhall give an inſight into that Affair: And firſt in chuſing a Horſe for Running; conſider he be well managed, tractable, and no ways skittiſh, familiar with his Keeper or Maſter, and free in eating what is given him; lively and ſpright-

ſprightful in his Looks and Actions; let him be one of an indifferent large Reach, well ſet in the Shoulders, and fairly Hipped, gaunt and ſmooth Backed, his Legs and Thighs ſtanding in due proportion, his Head ſmall and lean, with faſt or firm Cheek-bones, a ſharp or hawk's Noſe, wide Noſtrils, and wide Throple, and not exceeding twelve Years old, nor under ſix, being of a good breed: Nor is this all, for the main point of bringing him into a condition to Run ſucceſsfully is yet behind, which conſiſts in Dieting, Dreſſing, and carefully Ordering, before he undertake ſuch a Buſineſs: and in that caſe, if you would have him anſwer your expectation, obſerve theſe Rules, which are by the great Searchers into theſe Myſteries, held to be the beſt and moſt exact that ever were:

Reſolving to Run, and having matched your Horſe, the firſt thing you ought to do is, to have a regard to the ſtate and condition wherein he is, as to what relates to his Body in caſe of health, ſickneſs, or any other advantage or diſadvantage, and eſpecially to what follows: As, whether he be newly taken from Graſs or Soil, and by that means his Body rendred foul and unwieldly, over-burthened and incumbred with unneceſſary Fatneſs or crudy Humours; or, on the contrary, whether by bad uſage he is become Poor and Feeble; or that ſome hidden infirmity occaſion Leanneſs or a Pining-away: and, laſtly, whether he be in good liking or ſtate for your purpoſe, by having been moderately exerciſed and carefully regarded.

Theſe Conſiderations weighed, if you find your Horſe in the firſt Eſtate, let him not be matched, if it will any way ſtand with your conveniency, under ſix weeks, or at leaſt not in leſs than a month, that ſo he may be prepared by regular Diet and Applications, for what he is to undertake.

In the ſecond Eſtate, unleſs your Horſe be neglected, ſix weeks or a month may ſuffice, for that his Exerciſe may be ſuted to his Feeding, and in that caſe no time loſt, if he that looks after him be careful and induſtrious.

As for the laſt Eſtate, it being a medium between what has been mentioned, a month, with care is a ſufficient time to bring him to perfection, tho' many allow ſix weeks; but that is, as he is more or leſs inclining to fatneſs or groſs humours,

mours, contracted in rank Pasture, or by eating foul Provender. Now if it so happen, that any of these kinds be of a free and fiery nature, apt to excess in Exercise, thereby to spend the flesh he has got in Dieting, he that has the charge, must, as he sees convenient, restrain him with a hard hand; and if he be defective in feeding, let him use what devices he can to prompt him to it, as by whistling, singing, stroaking, clapping, rubbing, tossing his Provender, and the like, though in the fat Horse this ought chiefly to be observed; for the lean one, and that in good Case, if not indispos'd by any distemper or grievance, will eat freely and may be better exercised, not needing any restriction, unless upon extraordinary occasions, though a tender regard must be had to either.

CHAP. VI.

A Continuation of what is to be done to the Running or Race-Horse, relating as to his Election, Dressing, Feeding, and other Usage, &c.

THe Horse you chose, though naturally a good one, having contracted fatness or foulness by the means of too rank a Pasture or bad Feeding; having put him in a dry and warm Stable, though somewhat darkish, to render him the better feeder, lead him out by the rising of the Sun, suffering your Boy or Servant to give him a turn or two till you have cleansed the Stable of what is offensive; then return him, and having your Bridle dipped in Beer, put it on, and tye him up to the Rack; at what time Curry him in every part, beginning with his Head, and ending with his Pasterns; then with a Horse-tail, or clean Dusting-cloth, dust him over; that done, take your French-brush and rub him decently over in all parts, by such degrees as he may be sensible of your kind usage: As, first the Forehead, then the Cheek, so down the Neck on either side, after that the Shoulders, Fore-legs, Back, Sides, Belly, Buttock, Rump, Thighs, Cam-

Cambrils and the very Fetlocks, beating and ſounding the Hoof to make it ſit the firmer: This done, paſs over him again with your wet hand to ſettle the Hair, and render him ſleek and ſhining; the wet being dryed by a repetition, cleanſe his Sheath, Cods and Tuel, his Ears, Eyes and Noſtrils, his Mane, Foretop and Tail, and rub the moiſture, if any remain, from between his hinder Thighs, picking his Hoofs, and running over his Legs with dry Wiſps, or a clean Woollen-cloth, which if you ſee convenient, paſs over his Body, combing his Mane, Tail and Foretop: having thus far proceeded, take a large Body-cloth of Kerſey, or the like thick Woollen, and ſpread over him, if it happen in the Winter; but if in the Summer, that of a lighter make will ſuffice; on that lay a light Saddle, girting it pretty ſtrait, yet let a Wiſp or two ſtick on each ſide to give him the better breathing room, bracing the Cloth likewiſe about his Breaſt and Shoulders.

Thus having dreſſed and attired your Horſe, ſpurt a little warm Beer into his Mouth, and lead him forth, and mount him, leaving one to order the Stable and provide good Litter againſt your return, Wheat-ſtraw being the beſt of that with which your Stable muſt always be ſufficiently provided for; other Straw is not only unſeemly, but unwholeſome; the Oat-ſtraw breeding diſlike, and the Barley-ſtraw, if your Horſe be ſubject to eat it, a ſcowring.

Being abroad, ride your Horſe for ſome time a foot-pace, which, by the Curious, is termed Racing; and after you have ſo managed him for the ſpace of a Mile or more upon firm ground, advance to a Hill that gently riſes, if the ſituation of the place afford it; and mending by degrees his pace, bring him to Gallop up; the which when he has perfomed, Lead him, or Race him down to the beſt advantage, ſuffering him to cool and contract an equal temperature of Body. Thus having done, as you ſee your Horſe without over-ſtraining will conveniently bear it, lead him a Mile or thereabout to ſome pleaſant River or Spring, and ſuffer him to Drink moderately, and then Exercite him as before; which done, give him

a

a ſecond Watering, and after that another Exerciſe, ever obſerving to Exerciſe him before and after Watering; which done, Ride him eaſily home, and coming to the Stable-door alight, ſuffering your Horſe to ſtale or dung in the foul Litter; the which if he refuſe freely to do, provoke him to it by whiſtling, clapping, or waving your Switch, raiſing the Straw under him, and reaching him upon it; which will often, if not always, oblige him to it, cuſtom giving him an inſight into what you would have him to do. This done, lead him in and fix him upon the clean Litter, take off the Saddle and Body-cloth, rubbing him down, and cleanſing him as before; after which put on the Cloths, girt them gently with Cirſingles; and for the eaſement of his lying down, put Wiſps between of looſe and ſoft Hay or Straw: being thus cloathed, pick his Feet, and ſtop them with Cow-dung, caſting into the Rack a ſmall bottle of Hay well tyed up, it being well duſted, and let him tear it out at leaſure, whilſt he ſtands on his Bridle.

Your Horſe having ſtood for the ſpace of an hour, rub his Head well with a Hempen-cloth; and having cleanſed the Manger draw his Bridle, and take about three pints of large white Oats well dreſſed, ſweet and dry, free from light Oats, or ſuch as are defective; for the preparing of which, you ought to have a ſmall Wire-ſieve: Theſe being given to your Horſe, and if with a good ſtomach he eat them, you may give him a quart more, and ſuffer him to reſt till towards noon; at what time run over thoſe parts the Cloth covers not, with a Rubber; and having cheriſhed him with your Hand and Voice, give him a quart of Oats more, doing the like at one and three of the Clock in the Afternoon, or if it be in the Summer-time, you may ſtay till four; and when it is near Sun-ſet, having rubbed and clad him at all points, as in the Morning, lead him forth and Air him upon hard level ground, not too ſubject to ſtones; Gallop him gently; Water him in due order, as has been obſerved, and bring him home; in like manner, when you have obliged him to ſtale and dung, Dreſs him, Cloath him, and ſuffer him to ſtand on the Bridle till ſuch time as he has torn out of the Rack a ſmall bottle of Hay,

as

at what time give him another quart of Oats, the Manger being made clean, and leave him till about nine of the Clock the ſame Evening; at what time coming to him again, cheer him with Hand and Voice, rouſe up his Litter, and giving him another quart of Oats, leave him to his Repoſe till the next Morning, and ſo order him every day for the firſt Fortnight, daily encreaſing his Exerciſe, and keeping the Stable as dark as may be, both for his quiet and the better obliging him to feed, and by ſo doing you will find the advantage.

CHAP. VII.

Heats, what they are, and how to be manged to the beſt Advantage, in Racing.

IN conſideration of Heats and Exerciſe, they are ſomewhat different, the former being a more violent Courſe than the latter, and therefore twice a week is ſufficient for Heats, the days being as equally diſtant from each other as may be, one of them being obſerved to be on the day of the week, anſwering the day whereon the Race is to be run: obſerving likewiſe not to give any Heat in rainy Weather, unleſs neceſſity compel you thereto, for it is better to vary hours or days than ſo to do; and on ſuch emergent Occaſions you muſt provide your Horſe a Linnen-hood, made of thick Canvaſs, with a Bearing on the nape of the Neck, and covering over the Ears, ſo that none but the Eyes and Noſe appear: The Heats you give, in caſe of wholeſome weather, being to be given an hour before it is dark, and as ſoon as day ſprings, but not in the dark, for two Cauſes: as, firſt, to prevent unwholſome Airs; and, laſtly, ſtumbling, tripping, ſlipping, or falling.

The manner of Heating thus obſerved, the next thing to be conſidered is, the manner of Uſage and Diet for the ſecond Fortnight: Touching the firſt of theſe, there needs no great diſtinction between it, and what has been premiſed, only before his Bridle be put on in the Morning, you muſt give

give him about three pints of the the beſt Oats well ſifted; after the eating of which, Dreſs him up and Bridle him, Cloath, Saddle, Air, Water and return him in like manner, only what Hay you give, ſuffer him to take it out of your hand, and let him eat a pretty quantity if he deſire it, and while he does ſo, let him ſtand upon his Bridle; as alſo, draw not the Bit till an hour after; then having rubbed him all over, give him a quart more of well-ſifted Oats, and from this time forward make a Diet-bread to give him with his Oats, *&c.* according to Direction.

CHAP. VIII.

Bread of the firſt Make, and what ought to be obſerved in the Diſtribution thereof.

TAke to the quantity of three pecks of good Beans ſplent and well cleanſed from the Huſks, a peck of good Wheat; mix them well, and grind them into fine Flower or Meal, and having bolted and dreſſed them, make them into Dough, with ſtore of Yeſt and hot Water; break and tread it, that thereby it may prove the ſhorter, which ought to be done in a Kneading-trough; after that cover it with a warm cloth, and ſet it by the fire till it ſwell; then knead it again, and being well moulded, make it up into the bigneſs of three penny Loaves; ſoak them well, and when they are drawn from the Oven, turn the bottoms upwards and ſuffer them to cool; and at the end of three days, paring off the cruſt, the Loaf being dry and in good order, crumb it amongſt the Oats; but if it be too moiſt or clammy you muſt dry it in ſlices before the fire, or ſuffer it to grow ſtaler, always putting a third part of Bread, ſmall crumbled, to the Oats: and on this quantity of Provender ſuffer him to reſt till about eleven of the Clock, at what time renew the quantity of Bread and Oats, and leave him again till one in the Afternoon or longer, if the next day be not his Heating-day; but if the next day you intend to give him a Heat, then give him only a quart of

of the beſt Oats; and when he has eaten them, put on his Bridle and tye him up, not forgetting to rub him, and do what elſe is convenient; as, Dreſſing, Airing, Watering, bringing him home and putting him into the Stable, where having let him ſtand a while, give him a quart more of Oats; and then having a clean Muzzle, waſh it in Beer, Ale, or White-wine, put it on to prevent his eating the Litter, or gnawing the Manger or Rack-ſtaves, if he be prone to ſuch Vices, and let him ſtand till nine of the clock at night.

The beſt Muzzle for Summer is that which is made of ſmooth large Pack-thread or Whip-cord, well knit, yet ſo that the Horſe may freely breathe through the Lattice: and the Winter Muzzle, the beſt is of Canvas, with a ſquare Lattice of Tape at the bottom, both of them having convenient Loops and Strings to faſten them about the nape of the Horſe's Neck. The hour of nine being come, having well rubbed your Horſe's Head, and other convenient parts, as have been often mentioned, give him a quart of clean ſifted Oats; and when he has eaten them, put on his Muzzle, toſs his Litter, and leave him to reſt till the next morning; and then coming to him, if you find him lying, give him a quart of Oats, not diſturbing him till you find him diſpoſed to riſe, which he may be obliged to by the further allurements of Provender; and theſe Oats you may waſh in Ale or Beer, and afterward dry them by rubbing between a Cloth, and then Dreſs him, and putting on the Bridle and Body-cloth, lead him forth; after, by drawing up his Head to the Rack, you have obliged him to ſwallow a new-laid Egg, and waſhed his Mouth with a ſmall quantity of Beer; and after he has dunged or ſtaled upon the foul Litter, Rack him gently to the place you intend to Courſe him, ſuffering him, as you find him diſpoſed, to ſmell at Horſe-dung or Straw, if any lye in the way, which will oblige him to empty himſelf; and then finding him ſomewhat warm, take off the Cloaths, and ſend them away, Racking him gently to the Starting poſt, and beyond it, obliging him to ſmell to it, and then by degrees put him on to a three quarters ſpeed, obliging him if you find him able to hold it throughout; that is from the

Weigh-

Weighing-poſt, to the Poſt at the other end of the Rack: But in this caſe do not force him above his ſtrength and wind, but bear with his yielding, which will make him take pleaſure in what he does; and ſo, by degrees, he will come to perfection; obſerving upon what ground he takes moſt delight to run, and carries his Legs beſt, whether moiſt or dry, ſandy or ſtony, hilly or ſmooth, which may turn to your advantage in the Race.

Having heated your Horſe, breathe him again by gentle Galloping about the Field, till you find he begins to cool; at what time your Servant bringing the Cloaths, put them on under ſome warm Hedge, to ſhelter him from the Wind, and ride him gently home; or you may, if he ſweats much, ſcrape off the moiſture with a broken Sword-blade, or piece of a Scithe, before you cover him, and rub him with dry Cloths, not bringing him to the Stable till you find he is thorowly dry, and moderately cool, and that he have well emptied himſelf, and then ſuffer him to ſtand upon his Bridle tied to the Rack; and having the following Scowring ready prepared, give it him in a Drenching-horn, *viz.*

Take a Pint of the beſt Mallaga, and pulverizing an Ounce of Per-roſin, put it therein: which being incorporated, add ſix Ounces of Olive-oyl, and an Ounce and a half of brown Sugar-candy beaten to a Powder, with an Ounce of the Juyce of Savin or Powder of Rhubarb: heat them over a gentle Fire, and then by that means mixing them well, draw up his Head to the Rack, and oblige him to take it: by which means he will be eaſed of the molten greaſe and foulneſs.

CHAP. IX.

Other things to be taken notice of, in regard to the Running-Horſe, in the ſecond Fortnight.

YOur Horſe being thus uſed, great care muſt be taken that he catch not cold; to prevent which, you muſt rub

rub him well, and keep him warm clad, combing out his Mane, his Tail, and the like; keeping the Stable close, and putting large Wisps under his Cirsingles, and over them a loose Blanket or Coverler, if the Weather be any thing cold; and let him fast two Hours or better after he has taken the Scowring, keeping him stirring or moving all the time to prevent his sleeping; which in this case he will be apt to do, and thereby prejudice himself.

Your Horse having stood the space of two Hours, &c. give him some Ears of Wheat to chew upon, and so by the extraordinary beating and motion of his Body, the shortness of his Breath, and dulness of his Eyes, you may perceive that the Potion has met with abundance of bad Humours and gross Crudities, with which it struggles; and if so, you must forbear till the Sickness it will occasion be over; at what time take off his Bridle, turn up his Litter, and suffer him to lye down and ease himself for the space of an Hour; then rouse him, and let him tear a small Bundle of Hay out of the Rack; in the mean while dress him a Quart of Oats, and a Pint of Splent-beans; mix them together, crumbling amongst them a slice or two of the before-named Bread, and then suffer him to rest for the space of three Hours; and in the Evening, before you dress him, give him again the like quantity of Beans and Oats, clothing him up warm, but neither Saddle nor Ride him forth that Evening, nor give him any Water till the Potion has thorowly done working, only let him have another parcel of Beans and Oats washed in Beer, and so continue till Morning.

When day appears, dress him, and let him have a Quart of Oats only; then Cloath, Saddle, and gently Ride him abroad to Air him, and let him drink, but not over-much, lest after so long a drought he swell himself: And when you return him, let him be fed with Oats, Splent-beans and crumbled Bread, in all to the quantity of two Quarts, suffering him afterward to tear a little Hay out of your hand: And so continue him the second Fortnight, and he will increase in firmness, flesh, and strength.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

The Running-Horſe's third and fourth Fortnight; and as to Diet, Uſage, and bringing the Horſe to the Weighing-Poſt, &c.

THE third and fourth Fortnight's Management being material, I ſhall therein come cloſer to Particulars: And in this caſe your care muſt be to make him a ſecond Bread, finer than the former, but after the ſame manner in all reſpects; which being well dried and chipped, crumble it into his Oats and Beans; and that it may exceed the other in fineneſs, you may add as much Wheat as Beans, *viz.* Half a Buſhel of each, ſuffering him to take his Heats on the proper days with eaſe and pleaſure, not over-ſtraining him, thereby to render him ſtiff on the Racing-day.

The thing to be next obſerved, is, to omit the further Scowring, after you have given him other Heats; and in lieu thereof, give him a Ball made after the following manner: *viz.* Take Fenugreek and Cardamum-ſeeds, Anniſeeds, and thoſe of Cuminin, Coltsfoot and Elecampane-root, of each two Ounces: and having bruiſed them, and ſifted off the Husks and groſſer part, add two Ounces of the Flower of Brimſtone, and one of Licoriſh Powder: moiſten them with White-wine, and add more an Ounce of the Chymical Oyl of Anniſeeds, Moloſſus and Olive-oyl, of each half a Pint, and incorporate them with as much Flower as will make them up into Balls as big as Pullets Eggs, and keep them in a thick Glaſs, or well-glazed Pot for your uſe, they being good for a Horſe on ſundry other occaſions; as for Colds, Coughs, Glanders, Stoppage of the Stomach, or Shortneſs of Breath, in caſe of molten Greaſe or crudy Humours: And thus you may paſs him over the third Fortnight with good looking to, and a due obſervance of Heats, Airs and Diet: From which I proceed to the fourth and laſt Fortnight, for ſo much time is ſufficient to bring any Horſe to perfection.

In

In the fourth Fortnight, obſerve to let his Bread yet finer, as allowing three Pecks of Wheat to one Beans, reducing it to the moſt imaginable fineneſs, bolting and other ways dreſſing, lightning it up with ſufficient quantity of new Ale Yeſt, Whites of Eggs a new Milk; working them to the beſt advantage, and b king them as the former, and give it him crumbled amon the beſt Oats well ſifted, and well rubbed between yo hands; as alſo Splent-beans freed from the Huſks: Nor m you give him any Scowring, neither augment the Poti of his Meat. As for his Heats, the firſt Week you m give him two, but the ſecond Week one is ſufficient, a that ſome five days before he is to run; yet, to ſupply t defect of the other Heat, you may give him ſtrong Airin for the better preſervation of his Wind, and to rend him the cheerfuller; as alſo to remove groſs Fumes a Vapours, you may, Morning and Evening, burn any ſwe Perfume in a Chafing-diſh of Wood-coals in the Stable; *Benjamine*, *Storax*, *Frankincenſe*, or *Olibanum*, and often wa his Oats in Ale or Beer: And the better to corrobora him, give him every other day a new-laid Egg in a Gla of Muſcadel, and debar him from Hay, unleſs his Belly b very looſe.

The laſt Week obſerve, if he be a foul feeder, to muzz him, unleſs at ſuch times as you are with him, leſt by eat ing his Litter, biting the Manger or Rack-ſtaves, he injur him, or neglect his Diet; and, above all, let your Stabl be ſo kept, that neither Pigeons, Hens, or any Fowl ca come to dung in it; and the day before he is to run, le him have his proportion of Meat in the Morning; but i the Afternoon, take away a third part, and Shooe him to advantage; as likewiſe dreſs him well, breading hi Mane, Tail, and do other neceſſary things of ornament but with that caution, that he may not take diſtaſte thereat.

The Morning the Match is to be run, come to your Horſe before it is well day, and give him a Quart or three Pint of Oats, ſprinkled with Muſcadel or Whites of Eggs; but i he refuſe to take them, then you may give him dry Oats, with a third part Wheat, well ſifted and ordered, and en-

tice him what you can to empty himſelf; and ſo putting
his Muzzle, let him remain till you have notice to bring
m forth in order to run the Match.

The Warning being had, take off the Muzzle, and put
the Snaffle, it being waſhed in Muſcadel; then rub
im ſleek, and caſt a white Linnen-cloth over him next
his Body, and over that the Horſe-cloths; lay on them
e Saddle well pitched with Shooe-makers Wax, of which
e Girths muſt likewiſe participate, and girt it gently, ſo
at he may not be ſtraitned; give him after that a mouth-
l or two of Oats, and pour down his Throat half a Pint
f Muſcadel, with the Yolk of a new-laid Egg, and ſo
raw him out of the Stable, leading him to the Courſe,
ſing, by the way, your endeavour to make him empty.
Vhen he is arrived at the Weighing-poſt, waſh his Mouth
ith fair Water, rub his Legs and other parts, and then
ncloath him, and clap on your Saddle; then mount and
ait the Signal; when ſtarting fair, obſerve well your
Ground, and commit the reſt to the goodneſs of your
Horſe.

And thus, Reader, have I laid down the moſt approved Rules and Methods of this kind, which being put in practice and well obſerved, will doubtleſs turn to great advantage, and may indifferently ſerve in preparing a Horſe for any other Occaſion or Employment.

CHAP. XI.

What the Rider ought to be; Backing and good Management; the Office and Duty of a Groom, &c.

AS it is not every one that is fit for a Rider, relating to Management and Curious Occaſions; ſo it ought to be conſidered who is, and what his chief care muſt be, that he never ſpoil nor baulk a Horſe in his firſt Breaking, or in Racing; for ſuch things too frequently happen, and thereby render altogether fruitleſs the care, pains and coſt of the Breeder, and create ſuch Vices in the Horſe

Horſe as will not eaſily be removed; and therefore your Rider muſt be a temperate and patient Perſon, not given to fury nor anger, one of a ſtrait upright body, of an indifferent weight, not too heavy nor too light, by reaſon the one may render young Horſes, in Breaking, ſway-back'd, and the other regardleſs of him that ſits him; he muſt in his Function be laborious and diligent, a Lover and Cheriſher of Horſes; one who riſes early to practice, and is not given to immoderate exerciſing: and when the Horſe maketh a default, he muſt uſe his diligence to let him ſee it, and thereby render him tractable; for if the Perſon be haſty, raſh and cholerick, ſoon provoked to impatience, he can never make a perfect Horſe-man, neither can he be able to make a Horſe perfect, as otherways he might. If a young Horſe of the right ſtrain for ſhape, breed and colour, be well handled, he ſeldom fails to anſwer the expectation of his Maſter; when on the contrary, he may be ſpoiled, and be found good for nothing but the Plow or Cart: and this is often occaſioned in a young Horſe by the too much rigour of the Rider or Breaker, by which the Horſe is ſo confounded and overfeared, that he is not capable of underſtanding; or elſe, breaking through that fear, grows reſtiff and ſullen; when, on the contrary, ſweet words and mild behaviour wins ſo far upon a good natur'd Horſe, that in a ſhort time he will take pleaſure and pride in performing the will of his Maſter; and, when he readily does ſo, or at leaſt offers as far as his underſtanding will reach, he ought to be cheriſhed and incouraged, not only with words, but with ſome pleaſant and heartning morſel, which the Rider ought for that purpoſe to carry about him; at leaſt let him ſpurt ſome Wine, or other comfortable Liquor, into his mouth; and never correct him but when he is in a fault, always conſidering to ſtrike him in a convenient place, but not about the head, leſt he dull him, or give him opportunity to be hardned in the vice of going backward; nor with your legs and thighs preſs his ribs too hard, leſt his burthen become uneaſie and unpleaſant; ever conſidering in a ſtrait Courſe to keep a ſteady rein, not inclining to the right, nor to the left; and alſo an upright body, unleſs in a full courſe, at what time a little ſtooping forward, but not ſo as to preſs your weight on the

Horſe's

Horſe's ſhoulders, will not be amiſs, for that will prevent gathering the Wind; the which, though it be unperceived by many, is a great hindrance to the ſpeed of the Horſe: as for your Switch in ſuch caſes, it muſt be carried upright, or over his head, that he may not ſee it to affray him; nor decline your body from the one ſide to the other to overſway him, but in all things obſerve a moderation and mean, being ever ſure to have your ground in your eye, and thereon manage him to the beſt advantage; as alſo which ground he delights to tread, which in a Race may profit much; for it has been ſeen that many a good Horſe has been baulked by not being managed in ſuch ground as they naturally affect.

As for the Office of a good Groom, it chiefly conſiſts in keeping his Stable ſweet, clean, and warm, ſtored with freſh Litter, by frequently renewing the old, having your Horſes Cloaths, Furniture, and Materials, ever in readineſs; in being expert in the convenient times and manner of Airing and Feeding; knowing what Provender, and what quantity is ſeaſonable and ſufficient; and above all to be exact in Dreſſing and Furniſhing out for Ornament, as occaſion requires, minding what Saddles and what Bridles are moſt fitting and convenient, and taking care to place them in due order, that they may be in a readineſs when ever they are to be uſed: He muſt be a Man temperate and free from Paſſion, one who aims at his Maſter's Intereſt and his own Credit, ſuch a one as has ſkill in Horſes, and can diſcern the Grievances or Symptoms of Diſeaſes, always having Inſtruments ready to ſearch the Horſe's Feet, or Blood him upon neceſſary or emergent occaſions; and in caſe he ſee any imminent danger, he muſt not delay giving notice thereof to his Maſter, or the Farrier, leſt by neglect the Horſe may grow paſt Cure; nor when a Horſe is returned from a Journey heated, or the like, muſt not neglect him, but ever be careful to rub him well down; give him good Litter, Cloath him well, and let his Provender be proportionable and ſeaſonable; for if a Horſe be newly taken up from Graſs or Soil, an exceſs of dry Meat will prove injurious by ſubjecting him to Laſks, ſhortneſs of Breath, Coſtiveneſs and Pains in the Stomach, as his ſuddenly being turned from hard Meat into rank Paſture will cauſe Laxativeneſs,

UMI - 1994

tiveneſs, Scowrings, Pains in the Belly, Rawneſs of Stomach and offenſive Rheums. And thus much may ſuffice for the Office of the Groom, who, as to the feeding of a Horſe, may take further Directions from what has been ſpoken of the Dieting the Race-Horſe.

CHAP. XII.

Infallible Rules for Buying a good Horſe; and how ſo well by ſundry Marks and Tokens to diſtinguiſh Good from Bad, as well in caſe of Soundneſs as Diſeaſes.

IN the Election of a good Horſe many things are to be obſerved, and eſpecially to what end you deſign him when purchaſed; for certain it is, that no one Horſe, how perfect ſoever, can ſerve to all ends and purpoſes. Then for the goodneſs of his Breed, it is very difficult to be known but by Speculation, unleſs you will take it upon the credit of thoſe that had the breeding of him, in which you may run a hazard, for few Sellers will diſparage their own. However, this you may obſerve, that according to the Country this diſtinguiſhment is infallible: if he be of a *Spaniſh* Breed, then he is ſmall and neat limb'd; if *Neapolitan*, hook-noſed; if *Dutch*, rough-legged; if *Barbary*, neat bodied and headed; if *Flemmiſh*, full and ſmooth buttocked; if *Engliſh*, well-ſet and ſtrongly joynted; and ſo for others. Now the Colours are various, according to the conſtitution of the Horſe's Body, and by thoſe elected according as it likes the fancy of the Buyer, though there is difference in goodneſs, to be known by the Colours, as the Horſe participates more or leſs of the ſeveral Elementary Humours, and thus they are held:

The Cole-black, without any mixture of other coloured Hairs, is ſubject to Choler, and the heat thereby occaſioned, inclines him to Peſtilence, Feavours, Inflammation of the Liver, and other hot Diſeaſes: To prevent which Purges that correct the Cholerick humours are very convenient

venient, and Horses of this complexion of a fierce and fiery Nature, good for War and Travel; but by reason of the heat, which consumes the moisture that should support them, they live not, or at least last not long.

A Horse of a bright Bay, or dark Bay, with a clear and chearful Countenance, and a well-proportioned Mouth, is counted a lasting one, and fit for Racing, Hunting, or Travel, and is of a Sanguine Constitution; as also are the white-flanked or flea-bitten, white Loyard, with Hairs like Silver, or black, with a white Star, white Foot, or white Rash; and the Diseases these are most subject to, are Consumption of the Liver, Glaunder, Leprosie, and such like Disorders as are taken by Infection or Contagion, wet and foul feeding in damp weather, and the like, and will endure stronger Medicines than the former, without any danger, if they be not compounded of such Ingredients as will over-heat the Blood.

A Horse that is very white, pye-bald, yellow, and the like, are Flegmatick, and fittest for Cart and Plow, or to labour in Hills &c. not being capable of speed, or at least not able to hold it long; and are subject not only to lose their flesh, but to Staggers, Coughs, Catarrhs, cold Distillations, Rheumatisms, and the like Disorders, proceeding from watry humours; and therefore in case of such Disorders, hot Medicines are accounted the best and most successful.

The dark Bay, with long white hairs, russet, ash-colour, chesnut, grey or mouse-dun are accounted Melancholicks, and are subject to Inflamations of the Spleen, Dropsies, Frensies, oppression of the Heart, and pains in the Stomach; wherefore being of a dry Constitution, cold moist Medicines are requisite to be administred, and are generally heavy and lumpish; but if it happen you find a Horse with some or all of the colours, the latter being very rare, then conclude, that the four Humours predominate by turns. And though these Observations are made for Distinction's sake, yet it is found by Experience, which is the best Master, there are good Horses, or at least tollerable good of these kinds; therefore not any ways to discourage the Buyer, prejudice the Seller, that which follows ought due to be considered:

UMI - 1994

If you purchase a Horse for ease and gentleness, thou
to Travel considerably, then the most fitting is an Ambl
then observe in the moving of his Legs, that he perfor
it equally, smooth, large, just and nimbly; for if he tre
false, he will prove uneasie; treading short, ridds lit
ground; if he tread rough and uneven, he seems to ro
or tumble along.

If Hunting be your aim, especially that of the Buck,
for the riding Post, or the like, wherein a large Pace
required; the running or swift Amble, as some call it,
very necessary and expedient, differing from the oth
Amble only in the swiftness, and is altogether easie and d
lightful.

As for the Trot, or as some call it, the lofty Pace,
most properly belongs to War-horses, or indeed it m
indifferently serve to any other end; and those that Tr
well, seldom fail to Gallop; in which case, observe th
the Horse take up his Legs nimbly from the ground,
not raising them over high, nor rowling his Body from si
to side, that he beat not himself, if he forcibly labour
or do it in pain, but that stretching out his fore-leg,
nimbly follow with the hinder; nor by any means cut
der the Knee, which is called the Swift-cut; Further o
serving that he neither crosseth one Foot over or upon a
ther, but with his far Fore-foot ever leadeth, and not w
the other. If these Qualities are found, then the Horse
good for speed; but if he Gallop roundly, raising stron
his Fore-feet, he is fittest for a Charging-horse, or one
be trusted in carrying his Master through a dangerous
tack. If his Gallop be slow, so it prove sure, he m
make a Traveller; but if he handle his Legs confusedly
shufflingly, then beware of some defect, especially if
Gallop painfully.

As for the Stature, that I leave to every Man's discreti
as his occasion sutes or requires; the largest being for stro
solid labour; the middle size for swiftness and long journi
if not over-burthened; and the lesser size for ease and m
derate recreation: And what more remains materially to
known of this kind, is the Deformities and Imperfectio
that is, how to discover them; and these are contained

atural and accidental Deformities, inward and outward; nany of them hidden, and ſo ſecretly couched, inſomuch hat they well deceive the Skilful: And of theſe, eſpecilly of ſuch as are moſt dangerous, and materially to be nown, I ſhall acquaint you:

Firſt obſerve and inform yourſelf what you can, as to he Breed and Paces of the Horſe; when having taken off he Saddle and Bridle, leaving a Halter only upon his Head, auſe him to be rubbed down well, and ſtand juſt before im, earneſtly beholding his Countenance, whether it be hearful and ſprightly, free from cloudineſs or ſcowling; hat his Ears be ſmall, ſharp, thin and plyable; and tho' hey be inclining to longneſs, yet if they be well proporioned and well ſet on, it is not much amiſs, for his freeneſs, beauty, and goodneſs of mettle are thereby declared; when, on the contrary, if they be loleing, thick, heavy, ull and clouterly, weakly ſet on, and ſeldom moving, ullneſs and a heavy diſpoſition are denoted. If the Foreead of the Horſe ſwell, and the feather or mark ſtand high bove his Eyes, or on the top of his Eyes; if it happen he ave a white Star, or white Blaze, evenly placed, of an inifferent ſize; or if it be a Snip on the Noſe, it is a mark f Beauty; but if his Face be flat and cloudy, they are okens of dullneſs and defect; if the Star or Ranch be awry, or low, it is unſeemly; or the Noſe inſtead of a Snip, e Bald, it ſignifies badneſs, and a Horſe not fit for any onſiderable ſervice; if the Eyes be brown, black, ſhining, ſtaring or ſtanding out, and move with an equal moion, the black of the Eye filling the fleſhy Orb, ſo that ittle or nothing of the white appear, then is it a ſign of oodneſs, and a well-mettled Horſe; but, on the contrary, f the Eyes move ſlow and uneven, and the white greatly ppear; if they ſeem cloudy or dull, then it is a ſign of adneſs, and the like; if they ſeem wrinkled, or are very mall; if they be of a fiery red, they incline to Moon-blind r Moon-eyes, which are but a remove from Blindneſs; if he Eyes be white and walled, it denotes a weak ſight; if very bloody, inclining to blackneſs, bruiſes are thereby ignified; red, dull Eyes, and a hollowneſs, fore-run blindneſs; if the Eyes matter, and much rheum flow from

MI - 1994

thence, then the Horſe has been extremely abuſed by ov
riding, or elſe is very old; and ſo of the reſt.

When you come to handle the Horſe's Cheek or Cha
if there you find the Bone thin and lean, the Wind-pipes
Throple full and large, even, and free from knobs and k
neſs, and the Jaws ſtanding even, ſo that the Teeth ſhut li
a Box; and above ſo placed, that the Neck may ſeem
ſhut or ſink into them, it is a ſign of a free Horſe, and one
a good wind and courage; but, on the contrary, if his ch
and cheeks be thick, fat and ſuddenly inclined, the thro
ſmall, and muffled up with a thick groſs ſubſtance of f
(then eſpecially if it appear much kernally) it not only
nifies ſhort Wind, but threatens the Glaunders, Stargles, a
other Diſeaſes incident to Straitneſs and Purſiveneſs; a
more particularly dangerous Colds of many natures.

If it happen the Jaws be ſo ſtrait, that the Neck ſwell o
them as it were, yet if it be occaſioned by no Diſtemper,
matters not much as to the ſervice of the Horſe, though i
very unſeemly; but if it ſwell out long, and end taper, th
the Horſe may be ſubject to the Vives, Tumours, Impo
humes, or the like: Then obſerve that his Noſtrils be wi
large, open and dry, and that the redneſs naturally appe
without any forcing or ſtraining: If the Lips are even,
Mouth deep, and the Muzzle ſmall, they ſignifie good wi
ſpeed and courage; but if on the contrary, dulneſs and in
mity; as alſo by the ſhortneſs of the upper Lip, and wr
kles on the ſide of the mouth old age; and above all, obſer
his Teeth be clean, even, firm, and well proportioned.
of them more particularly hereafter, when I come to ſpe
of the Horſe's Age, though, in general, unſeemly and u
even Teeth are a ſign of badneſs.

Obſerve the Breaſt of your Horſe; and if it appear bro
bowing outward and well feather'd, it denotes health a
ſtrength; when on the contrary, a ſmall Breaſt, ridged
flat; as alſo the Shoulders ſtanding in, denotes ſtoppag
weakneſs in travel, pains of the Heart and Liver, and t
like, with ſtumbling and interfering; as alſo does a Bre
that is narrow and imbowed inward; thoſe being gen:ra
the marks of a Horſe weak, and unfit for labour.

Next caſt your Eyes from the Elbow to the Knees, a

e his fore thighs be well proportioned, ſtrait, and well
ad with fleſh and ſinews; by which ſtrength is ſignified,
nd by the contrary, weakneſs.

Obſerve the Knees, that they are carried even, that they
e well joynted, cloſe knit and fixed, with Sinews and Li-
aments free from Scabs and Scars, not over-round, but
ell joynted, and boned; for if they appear contrary to
eſe marks, as round, and ſwelling of a more than ordi-
ary bigneſs; if they be ſcabbed, broken, or the hair off,
hen it betokens an uneven treader, and one that is apt to
umble, or ſubject to the ſwift-cut.

Having thus far taken notice, the next thing to be obſer-
ed materially, is from the Knee to his Paſterns; and there
onſider, if the Legs be clean, well fleſhed and well ſinew-
d, bowing ſomewhat inward, which ſhews ſtrength and a
rm treader; but if on the inſide you find any fleſhy Ex-
reſſences, or Scabs, a little beneath the Knee on the in-
ide, likewiſe then is the Horſe ſubject to interfering; but
a general Scab, *&c.* then the cauſe is foul keeping; if
n the inner bowing of the Knee you perceive Seams, or
he hair broke diſorderly, a cankerous Mallender is denoted,
r Ulcer.

Obſerve that the Paſterns be clean and well knit toge-
her, eſpecially the firſt, and the other ſhort and ſtrong,
tanding upright; if the firſt be large or ſwelled, then is
he Horſe frequently ſubject to the Sinew-ſtrain, and twitch-
ng girds; if the other be weak or bending, it will hardly
ſupport the body in any long journey, or uneaſie way.

As for a good Hoof, it ought to be black, rough, and
much inclining to roundneſs; for a long, white, rough or
brittle Hoof, denotes an uneven tread, a tripping or loſing
he Shooe upon every occaſion, and is altogether unſeem-
y, and fore-ſhews the Horſe ſubject to foundring. As for
the Crownet of the Hoof, obſerve if the fleſh ſwell a little,
and that the hair lye decently in good order, that no Scabs
nor boney Excreſſences happen there; for if thoſe appear,
ten to one but the Ring-bone will afflict it.

Thus having obſerved your Horſe in the front, place your-
ſelf on the right ſide of him, and obſerve that his Head be
neither too high nor too low; that his Neck at the ſetting

on be ſmall, and indifferently long, growing deeper by d
grees, till it arrive at the Shoulder; then for the Creſt l
it be high, ſtrong, and ſomewhat thin; his Mane ſomewh
curling, thin, long and ſoft. Theſe are not only Signs
a good Horſe, but a Beauty alſo; and conſequently the co
trary of Deformity.

In the next place, have a regard to the Chine of h
Back, that he have a due proportion of even, broad, an
ſtrait; his Ribs ſomewhat large, and bending outward
like a bow; his Fillets ſhort, ſtrong and upright, abou
four fingers diſtance from his laſt Rib, and his Huckle-bone
his Body being well let down, yet hidden as it were withi
his Ribs; his Stones round and even hanging: and thei
are marks of Beauty and Perfection. Whereas on the con
trary, a narrow Chine will ſubject the Saddle to wound th
Horſe, and bending or Saddle-back'd denotes weakneſs
to have the Ribs over-fat, makes the Horſe breathe painful
ly, when hard laboured. If his Fillets hang long and thin
they denote him weak, and not capable of performing
Journey in a hilly Country; and if his Stones hang down
as in long bags or purſes, uneven and unſeemly, it denotes
a defect in Nature, occaſioned either by Sickneſs, or a fee-
ble Conſtitution.

As for his Buttocks, note that they be round, full and
plump, and that the Tail be well ſet on; the beſt obſer-
vance being the evenneſs of the Buttocks with the Body;
and although they are ſomething long, that they ſpread
well behind, and are not inclining to make a ridge of the
Crupper-bone, nor ſtand long and narrow; for in ſuch ca-
ſes neither a Pillion nor Pad-ſaddle can ſit eaſie nor con-
venient.

The hinder Thighs commonly called the Gaſcoins, are
likewiſe to be regarded; and the obſervation is, that they
be well let down in an evenneſs to the middle joynt, thick,
brawney, full, and ſwelling, by which ſtrength and good-
neſs are to be obſerved; whereas a lean lank Thigh not well
griſled, but very ſlender, denotes weakneſs; Then obſerve
the middle joynt behind, and ſee that it be ſomewhat lean,
well knit and ligamented, and Sinews well veined, and mo-
derately bending, which ſhews perfection in that part; but

if

if it have any Chops or Sores in the inward bending, then it threatens a Sellender; and if it have a general Swelling, then ſome blow or bruiſe has happened; again, if the Swelling be particular in the Pot or hollow part, or on the inſide, and there it happen the Vein be full and proud, and the Swelling moreover ſhort, then is it the Blood-ſpavin; if hard the Bone-ſpavin; but if it happen behind, on the Knuckle, then is it a Kerb or Curb.

After this look on the hinder Legs, obſerving whether they are clean, well fleſhed, and ſupported with Sinews: if ſo, it is a good ſign; but, if they be fat, they will not endure labour; and if they ſwell, it is a ſign the greaſe is molten in the body of the Horſe, and that he is foul; if ſcabbed above the Paſterns, then beware the Scratches; if under the Paſterns, Chaps appear, then it is the Pains: All which are infectious and dangerous to the Horſe, and render him far from being good.

As for the Tail, it ſeldom ſits amiſs upon a good pair of Buttocks; and on the contrary, never well upon ill ones; but the beſt ſetting on is broad, high and flat, a little couched inward.

CHAP. XIII.

Infallible Rules to know the Age of a Horſe by his Teeth, in all their particular and general Marks; as alſo by the Tail.

THE full number of a Horſe's Teeth are computed Forty, and ſeldom, when he has all that he will have, prove leſs: And thus they are diſtinguiſhed, *viz.* On either ſide, above and beneath, ſix great wang Teeth, which compute at twenty four, generally termed Grinders; then ſix above, and the like number below, in the fore part of his Mouth, which, with the other, make thirty ſix, theſe latter being properly called Geatherers: and, moreover four Tuſhes, two above, and the like number below, generally called Bite-teeth: And from theſe the Conſiderations are as follow:

MI - 1994

In the first Year only the Grinders and Geatherers, commonly called Colts-teeth, only appear small, white and smooth.

The second Year two of those Teeth are changed in the middle of the Geatherers, *viz.* one above, and another below; and as for those that come up in the room of the shead ones, they are generally darker or browner, though they may be distinguished other ways by the largeness.

The third Year, the next to those before-mentioned are changed, leaving the rest to be changed the successive Years, so that after the fifth Year no Colts-teeth, and then likewise his Tushes are compleat; and those that succeed the last Foal's Teeth will be hollow, having in the midst of them small black Specks, of which many take singular notice, shaping their Judgment thereby; though if they take not heed, they may be imposed upon by artificial as well as natural Specks or Spots, though indeed by these natural Spots a Horse's Age may be known till eight Years are past, and no longer.

The sixth Year being come, his new Tushes arise, at the bottom of which young flesh will appear, the Tushes being small, white, short and sharp, and so continue to the seventh Year; in which Year they are of full growth, and the Mark very plain to be seen and observed.

The eighth Year all the Teeth will appear plain and smooth, but the Specks, generally called the Marks, will decrease by degrees, till they are seen no more, ending as it were with or before this Year, nor will the Tushes continue longer white, but incline to a yellowish.

The ninth Year being come, and the Mark consequently no more to be seen; consider the Fore-teeth will be broader and longer than usual, their colour inclining to a yellowish paleness, and the Tushes to bluntness.

The tenth Year's Age may be known by the filling up of the holes within side the Tushes, which were before like cells or hollow pits; as also his Temples will be crooked or distorted.

The Horse being arrived at the eleventh Year of his Age, the most material thing to be known by the Teeth is their distortion, yellow colour and unseemliness; as, also their more

more than ordinary length. Now as for the twelfth, and generally held to be the laſt Year, a Horſe's Age can be known by the Teeth; your obſervation muſt be taken from their largeneſs, foulneſs, and hanging over each other; and though ſome have held, that by the cloſe wearing of his Tuſhes to the chops his Age may be further known; yet let me adviſe the Buyer, that he may not be deceived therein, that being no certain Rule or Mark, eſpecially to rely on. And thus much as to what relates to the knowing a Horſe's Age by the Teeth; from whence I proceed to his Mouth in general; and that which I infer from thence is this:

If upon having regard to a Horſe you perceive his Teeth and Lips hang over, uneven or unpleaſant, unleſs it proceed from ſome Diſtemper in the Head, or Diſorder in the Body, then is that Horſe old.

Obſerve you find not too deep a burning for the *Lampas*, that ſo the Provender may be apt to ſtick therein to his hindrance in feeding; and that the ſpaces between the Barrs are not too deep and hollow of themſelves, for that denotes Age, but that they be pleaſantly fixed, ſmooth and ſoft.

As the Eyes are, if ſprightly and well fixed, a great ornament to the Horſe, ſo if other ways, they render him uncomely and deformed; wherefore the defects ought to be conſidered, *viz.* If upon view you perceive the Eyes to be ſunk, dim, hollow pitted, the Temples crooked or wrinkled, then old Age is ſignified: But if the contrary, *viz.* If the Pits be full, the Eyes lively, bright and ſparkling, the Temples ſtrait, and ſmooth, then is the Horſe young.

If you miſtruſt a Horſe's age, and cannot well find it according to the former Directions, then apply your feeling to the Tail; and if there you find two knobs near the Setting-on, each about the bigneſs of a Muſket-bullet, then you may conclude your Horſe to be very young; but if the Joynt thereabout be plain and ſmooth, no ſuch ſign or token appearing, then conclude him to have paſſed the tenth Year; and ſo by thoſe knobs, proportionable to the bigneſs, conſider his Years.

Other Considerations there are to be had from the Hair and Skin, as, if you perceive any Hairs that are grisly about the Eye-brows, especially if the Horse be of a dark or contrary colour; or if such be found underneath, the main Age thereby is signified: The like if a white Horse, or one very light coloured, happen to have black or red Mannals. As to what is to be observed from the Skin, let this be the Rule: If the Horse be old, the Skin you raise between your thumb and finger will stand in a pucker, and not suddenly return to its place; but if young, it will fall flat almost as soon as let go. Nor is the Hoof to be altogether neglected in this case; for if you cast your Eyes upon a Horse whose Hoofs are crinkled, seamed, rough or unseemly; or if they be brittle, and subject to break or crumble, then is the Horse old or infirm. And thus much may suffice as to Age, unless somewhat that will occur by the way in handling other matters of the like nature.

CHAP. XIV.

How exactly to know the State or Condition of a Horse's Body relating to Fatness or Leanness, Health or Sickness.

IF you find your Horse in a drooping condition, if he refuse his Meat, and be heavy or dull eyed, seem uneasie standing, or restless, lying down, then conclude some inward grief or defect afflicts him, not to be so easily discovered as some have conjectured: Wherefore I shall first point my Directions at the state of a Horse's Body in general, and from thence to particulars: beginning, the better to give the Reader an insight into the rest, with the strong Estate or healthful Constitution of a Horse, &c.

As for some Horses, though they are in Health and good Temper, yet by reason of their roundness and well-compacted Body, the Buyer may have a lean one put upon him instead of a fat one, unless he be skilful in handling and trying, thereby to discover his want of Flesh, or feeble

Consti-

Constitution; and so a Horse that is long and full made, may seem lean to the Eye, at a distance, when really he is in good case; or a fat Horse may likewise deceive the expectation of the Buyer, by having contracted inward fatness and foulness, which will require time and labour to avoid and bring away; when on the contrary, some Horses will be fat without, and in good case, yet be clean within, and be free from gross humours; and others again, though outwardly appearing lean, will be inwardly gross and foul: and these proceed from the Order and Constitution of the Horse, *&c.* And this is to be known upon search, by demonstration, sundry ways, as to what is outwardly to be taken notice of.

First feel the Horse's Body in all the advantageous places, but especially upon the Ribs; and in so doing, if you perceive a general softness of the flesh, or looseness, so that your fingers easily sink into it, then conclude a foulness within; or if it be hard and firm upon all but the hindmost Ribs, then suspect Molten-grease within, which must be voided by Purging or Scowring; though at the same time the Horse appear poor and lean, or else he cannot well be reduced to a good state of Body; and the better to make the Potions operate, is to prepare him for them by exercise, that being moved and stirred, it may the easier be brought away.

If so it happen, as has in some manner been said, that the Horse appear so fat and thick, that the space between his Chaps is as it were closed up, or the Jaws upon handling prove fleshy and full, then much foulness in Head and Body is signified; but if upon handling he happen to be thin and clean, though some hard knobs be contracted, yet that may rather proceed from a Cold taken, than from Foulness, *&c.* But to come to Particulars:

If the Horse's Dung appear of a pale, whitish, yellow Colour, not too hard, yet so that in falling it only flat a little, but does not break in sunder nor crumble, and be not of a rank noisome scent, then is the body of the Horse free from inward foulness: but on the contrary, if it be of a black or muddy colour, hard, like Pellets, yet hot and greasy, it betokens foul feeding, and a neglect in the Keeper of not gi-

ving

ving him a due proportion of Corn, but rather feeding him with Hay in over-abundance, or suffering him to feed foul by eating his Litter, denoting he has likewise Molten-grease within him that cannot come away without some Artificial Helps. If the Dung be of a reddish colour, and hard, it signifies the Horse has been over-heated or over-strained, and therefore ought to have a Glister of cooling Simples to open and cool his Body, thereby preventing Sickness, or at least Costiveness.

If the Urine be of an Amber colour, somewhat inclining to thickness, of a strong, yet not offensive scent, then it denotes a healthful constitution; but if it be ruddy or high-coloured, hot and scalding, so that the Horse makes water with pain, or does it by degrees, then has he taken hurt by being over-heated, or in being ridden too soon upon being taken up from Grass: if so it happen that the Urine be of a high colour, and yet very clear, like Beer, well settled, then is it occasioned by Heat or Inflamation, caused by a Surfeit.

If a white film or scum happen to be upon the Urine after settlement, it denotes the Horse weakned by too much Venery; and in a Mare by too often Breeding, too furious a Luft, and consequently not very fit for service, by reason of the weakness of her back. Green Urine denotes a Consumption of the Body; and that with bloudy streaks or specks, not much unlike to a mattery substance, denotes an Ulcer, or the like defect in the Kidneys: And further, a lead-coloured, gross and cloudy Urine, denotes a dangerous Sickness, if not Death itself. And thus much as to what is to be known in relation to Health and Sickness by these Excrements.

And now let us consider a little, if a Horse be out of order, how those that attend him ought to carry themselves to him, in relation to his Diet:

Let him observe in this case the Disposition of the Horse, and not violently thrust or intrude the Provender upon him, but consider to give him what he best likes, and that at leasure and by degrees, winning him with mildness and sweet behaviour; and be wary, above all things, not to give him any offence, encreasing the quantity as you perceive him desirous

ſirous to take it, giving him white water to drink, and ply him as you ſee occaſion, with warm Maſhes, warming his Water with a little Bran duſted over it, if the Weather be cold; and be ſure to ſuffer him to be in a warm Stable, with clean Litter and good Dreſſing.

If your Horſe be any ways ſubject to Lameneſs, beware in your Courſings or Heats you avoid craggy and ſtony Ground, or forcing him too much againſt a Hill.

CHAP. XV.

Obſervations to be taken as to the State of a Horſe's Body from the Privy-parts, Limbs, Feeding and other matters, &c.

THe Privy-parts of a Horſe, as to Sickneſs and Health, are much to be obſerved; and this eſpecial notice to be taken, *viz.* That if he be a Stone-horſe, his Cods hang even, and his Stones well truſſed up, firm and round, which ſhews him in good heart, and fit for buſineſs; when, on the contrary, if they hang long, or bagging down, a weak Conſtitution is thereby implied: Nor is it leſs to be obſerved by the Yard of a Gelding, or Shape of a Mare. But, for Brevity's ſake, waving farther particulars, I ſhall proceed to take Obſervations from the Limbs, and what, in caſe of defect, ought to be done on that occaſion:

In caſe you intend to Run or Travel your Horſe, if you find his Limbs ſtiff, or not ſo pliable as you would have 'em, or as ordinarily they happen to be; then to render them ſupple and pliant, Melt Hog's greaſe and Oil of Chamomile, and dipping a Woollen-cloth hot into the Liquids, annoint or bathe therewith his Legs or Thighs from above the Knee, and from the Cambrels downwards; or, for want of theſe, Neat's Foot Oil; after which chaſe it in with your hands; and in often ſo doing in all places where you ſee occaſion, you will wonderfully reſtore his Limbs, rendering them ſupple and pliable.

There

There are many things to be obſerved from the Sweating of a Horſe, eſpecially from that which proceeds without external force, occaſioned through hard labour, or the like; for then is the Horſe faint, foul fed, or wanteth Exerciſe to evaporate the abundance of watery Humours which he has contracted: And eſpecially this is to be noted, when his Sweat is white and frothy, like a Lather of Soap; but in caſe of Heats, and other hard labour, to create Sweat; if it appear black and pearly, like clear Water, then is the Horſe in a good plight or habit of Body, eſpecially if he be lively and briſk, not in the leaſt afflicted with any ſhaking or trembling; for that infers the Sweat forced out by ſome internal diſorder, rather than naturally evaporated.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Elementary parts of a Horſe's Body, and of the Agreement of the Humours therewith. A Diſcourſe of Corruption and Generation, as Goodneſs or Badneſs, Health or Sickneſs, &c.

AS for the Body of a good Horſe, it differs not in the Elementary compoſition from that of Man; for of all the Elements it conſiſts, *viz.* Fire, Air, Earth, and Water, which indeed are the Generatives and Conſumers of all mortal things and beings; and although theſe Elements are different in themſelves, yet are frequently agreeable in Compoſition; for the Fire, though hot and dry in itſelf, yet compounded with the other Elements in a mortal Frame or bodily Compoſition, diffuſes a gentle heat to nouriſh and ſupport life. Though the Air is hot and moiſt, but moſt participating of the latter, yet does it temperate the heat of the former, and gives a kind of reſpiration and gentle breathing to refreſh and exhilerate each Part and Particle. The Earth, though it is in itſelf groſs and ponderous, yet in this compoſition is it rarified, and by its ſubſtantial matter compoſes the frame wherein the reſt of the Elements do habit; and being cold and dry, ſerves to temperate the heat

and moist. The Water, though cold and moist in it self, serves in this case to moisten and render pliable the Sublunar Works of Nature, and enables them to subsist: And all these four Mothers of Creation participate more immediately of the four Humours, of which the Bodies of Animal and Rational Creatures are composed, as Choler, Bloud, Melancholly, and Phlegm; the first of Fire, the second of Air, the third of Earth, and the fourth of Water: and as these more or less operate, so, according to their qualities, is the Body moved and exposed to heat, cold, moisture, or driness, and consequently to the effects they produce; for these have their principal Dominion in the Seats of Life, and from thence extend their power and force to every part and member. As this Phlegm possesses the Brain, Choler and Bloud the Liver and Heart, and Melancholly the Spleen, which is the Receptacle and Conveyance of the Excrements of the Liver, all of them having distinctly and conjunctly their proper Office assigned: as thus, the Bloud is the principal nourisher of the natural frame, Phlegm or Moisture renders the Members flexible and compliant in motion and use. Choler causeth digestion by its operative heat; and Melancholly disposes to an appetite, and attracteth the grosser parts of nutrimental Elements, and occasioneth the disburthening of Nature.

It is generally agreed on by the Learned, That every Organical Body is supported by four principal instrumental Members; and these are held to be the *Brain*, *Heart*, *Liver*, and *Genitals*, these performing their particular Offices and Functions: For as the Sinews are supported by the Brain, the seat of Animal Spirits; the Arteries from the Heart, or seat of Vital Spirits; the Veins, which are natural Parts, from the Liver; so the Seminal Vessels are supported by the Genital Parts or Instruments of Generation; and these conjoyntly operating, are the Elementary Substitutes, as participating of their Nature, and consequently the Materials of Generation.

Thus having briefly discourſed of the Elementary Parts of the Bodies of Creatures, I now proceed from the four Humours, Elements, and Instrumental Members, to the Natural Faculties; which in this case are the next things to be con-

MI - 1994

conſidered, which are, Retaining, Concocting, and Expelling; and though all the Humours are Inſtrumental in promoting theſe, yet principally Nature ſerves herſelf but of only one to work upon, and that is a wheyiſh kind of Blood, generated in the Liver, or attracted thereby from the pureſt part of ſuch Nutriment as has been concocted in the Stomach, and from thence conveying itſelf to the Liver; and through the great Vein, conveying Nutriment into all its branches, and conſequently into all the parts of the Body, by diſperſing the rarified Blood into every part, which, by the help of the other Humours, ſupports the frame of Nature. As for the watry part of Nouriſhment, and that of the groſſer ſubſtance; the one is carried into the Bladder, and the other paſſing into the Bowels, are in the end caſt out of the Body to make room for more of the like nature. But, moreover, there are two Veins that conduct part of the pureſt and rarified Matter into the Seminal Veſſels, where, by the operation and contraction of the Generative Parts, it is refined by a gentle heat to a more ſpirituous quality, and ſo in the end becomes Seed, which, according to the goodneſs or badneſs mixed in the Womb, proves effectual or ineffectual: for note, That if the thin and ſubtil Blood be wanting to ſupport the Seed, and enliven it with heat, it frequently fails in performing its Office, and the Horſe becomes fridged and uncapable of performance, and is often ſubject to moiſt Diſeaſes; as the Glaunders often proceeding from the Liver and Lungs when they are infected with Putrefaction, occaſioned by moiſt Rheums, and other indigeſted Moiſtures deſcending on them, or Inflammations occaſioned by Lumps, Knots or Kernels under the Chaul, proceeding from cold or immoderate Labour, and many times the Morning of the Chine by a Horſe's immoderate Leaping a Mare, or over-ſtraining himſelf in the Action: And this may likewiſe happen by eating too much raw Meat, or drinking upon a ſudden Heat, and many other ways; which, when I come to treat of Diſeaſes, I ſhall largely diſcourſe on. But firſt I ſhall proceed to let you know how Horſes ought to be uſed, to prevent their contracting Diſeaſes as much as in the ſuperficial Schemes of Art the greateſt Artiſts of this kind have allowed; and the

means

means are chiefly five, as Cleansing, Blood-letting, Purging, Sweating, and Vomiting.

The first of these may be said to be two-fold, as outward and inward; the first being by cleansing his external Parts by care and good Dressing, which ought the more diligently to be observed upon his being taken up from Grass; and the time limited for that, by the Curious, is *Bartholomew*-tide, for the heart of the Grass beginneth to decline. And this may be done in the manner which I have often recited in what relates to Dressing; nor is it at all inconsistent with Reason, that the cleansing the Skin from dust and dirt, and loosening it in every part by gentle rubbing, should enliven the Horse, and render him more sprightly; so that Nature having her free course and progress without restraint, may operate in dispersing kind refreshment to every part, and keep those gross Humours from setling, that are frequently the original of Diseases and Grievances; and so if it happen that your Horse be miery and foul, then may you use Fulling-earth, Soap, and other scowring Materials, especially with warn Water; but then having an especial care he catch not cold thereupon, keeping him warm, and well drying him till he be thoroughly cold; and in so doing you will prevent those moist Diseases wherewith he is always afflicted; and the better to effect this, cut away all the superfluous Hairs that any way annoy the Body, or other parts, *&c.* And so being shooed and neatly dressed, I leave him to the Second Part, which consists in the Internal cleansing and purging Directions; for which, in consideration of more immediate or particular Directions, take in the following Chapter.

CHAP. XVII.

How a Horse ought to be used in general and particular, as to his Physick, Diet, and Looking to.

AS for the inward Purging, the measures ought to be taken from the temperature of the Horse's Body, and more

more eſpecially in caſe of his retirement at ſuch a time, tha no hard Labour or immoderate Exerciſe has been impo ſed on him: and in this caſe, if you find him Coſtive, o that in caſe of Evacuation, Nature help not, as in uſual ca ſes, let ſome one with a ſmall Arm penetrate his Funda ment, and draw thence the Dung that obſtructs, or at lea clogs the fluent or natural paſſage, that ſo both the natur and artificial Motions and Cauſes proceeding from th Drugs, or compoſition of Purgation, may operate and pe fect the intended deſign, and may be beſt adminiſtred Cly ſter-wiſe: but then, conſider the conſtitution of you Horſe; if he be fat, and ſomewhat inclining to foulne it muſt be a ſtrong Potion that will effectually operate; b not ſo if the Horſe be weak and melancholly. But, wavin 'em here, I ſhall ſpeak more particularly of them in du place; as alſo of Drinks which ought to be made, and ſe ſonably given for the preventing Sickneſs, and preſervatio of Health; and if you find the Blood coagulated, whic may be perceived by trembling of the Veins, and th working of it therein, then it is requiſite to let him Bloo and give him a gentle Vomit to carry the foulneſs from t the Stomach, that may be the occaſion of bad Digeſtio and conſequently the naughtineſs of the Bloud; Dieti him with Marſhes and fine Provender, from which m ſpring ſuch wholſome nutriment, as may create a thin a airy Bloud; rubbing and often anointing his Body wi Hog's Lard, or Ointment of Marſhmallows. And now to ſatisfied what things moſtly contribute to Health, take t following Opinions of the Learned, *viz.* A good natur conſtitution, good digeſtion, good nouriſhment, modera on in feeding and diet, moderation in labour and ſleepi and moderation in leaping of Mares. Again, wholſome a not laboured too ſoon after graſs, to be kept from raw mea not to drink nor eat being hot, ever obſerving to walk h at the end of any Journy, and not to Phyſick him unleſs y find occaſion. And theſe Obſervances being the occaſion long Life, I ſhall endeavour, for the better ſatisfaction of t Reader, more fully to demonſtrate them.

As for Nature, good Digeſtion, and ſound Nutriment, th ought to be conſonant, and indeed they are well propo

one

oned, when neither the Moisture with its humidity is not so predominant as to quench and over-power the heat, nor the extraordinary Heat too suddenly consume the Moisture, though of necessity the latter must be of force above the former, or else Digestion cannot be perfected as it ought; and in that case seasonable nourishment must consequently fail.

Moderation in Eating is another main cause of long life, as immoderate Eating is of a short one: For as excess in Eating, though the Provender be never so good and wholesome, obstructs good digestion, and contracts crudities with a bad habit of stomach; so on the contrary, spare Diet weakens and decays Nature, and infeebles the natural powers and faculties of Life, giving the Heat by that means a power absolutely to subdue and conquer the Radical Moisture, and gives Diseases an opportunity to break in upon the infeebled Body, which prove many times too hard for the Farrier; for in all Creatures observe, that the weaker Nature is, the stronger is the Distemper.

Another cause of Health and long Life proceeds from moderate and kind labour, for by indifferent motion digestion is much forwarded, and the humours dispersed, being by that means prevented from setling more than is requisite in any one place; besides, it is the cause that Excrements are sooner voided, which by lying down in the Body might occasion sickness. And further observe, that he be not laboured upon a full stomach, so as by over-straining digestion may be hindred, which should turn to nutriment, and lay a foundation for Diseases by indigested Crudities, being too suddenly drawn into the Veins, and by that means dispersed into all parts of the Body.

Another cause there is of the like nature that depends upon the moderateness of sleeping and waking, for too much waking is an enemy to Health, by spending the vital Spirits that should support and maintain Life, and a decaying that Moisture that should refresh the several parts of the Body, causing thereby leanness and barrenness, a dulling of the Brain, and defect in the Lungs and Liver, whose Offices it weakens by decaying the vigor in the performance; and contrary to this, excessive sleeping dozes the Brain, hinders digestion,

and

and obſtructs Nature in the performance of her Offices, contracting noxious Vapours and a Foulneſs of the Stomack.

Another thing to be conſidered is, that your Horſe be not admitted to ſpend himſelf too much upon Mares, becauſe ſuch immoderate Exerciſe weakens the Brain, Back and Eyes, waſtes the Vital Spirits, and often ſhortens the life of many brave Horſe; and therefore if you would have your Horſe laſt long, let him not cover above three or four Mares in a Year at the moſt; or if your conveniency will not at all times admit you to keep him from them, then geld him whilſt young; for it is ever obſerved that a Gelding lives longer naturally than a Stone-horſe, and a Mule than both, becauſe he is not ſubject to Generation.

Wholſome Air above all things is to be choſen, for that rarifies the bloud, helps digeſtion, and comforteth the Vital Spirits; when as groſs Air or evil Scents not only make the Horſe loath his Provender, but corrupt the bloud, and ſubject the whole body to diſeaſes.

Travelling after Graſs too ſoon, without purging and cleanſing the Horſe's Body, cauſe the bad humours to incorporate, or by ſpreading themſelves to afflict each part with pains and diſorders, reducing the Horſe to a dulneſs of temper and diſpoſition, and ſo raw Meats engender raw flegmatick Humours, afflicting the Stomach and Brain, occaſioning the Glaunders, Coughs, Catarrhs, Stavers, Yellows, Anticors and Morfoundring, not only diſable the Horſe, but, if neglected, become incurable but by Death.

Another cauſe there is, and that not to be lightly regarded, which is, not to ſuffer your Horſe to eat or drink when hot, and to ſtand thereon, for by ſo doing the Blood will corrupt and purrifie, occaſioning Surfeits, Feavers, Obſtructions, and many the like Maladies and Grievances, frequently occaſioning death: But as ſoon as you bring him home in that condition, put him into a warm Stable without waſhing; rub, or cauſe him to be well rubbed down; cloath him well, and let him have a ſufficient quantity of warm Litter to ſtand on; and if he be ſubject to eat it, put on his Muzzle and ſo let him ſtand an Hour or more till his Greaſe be ſufficiently cooled, and you'll find him in a fit condition to give him

him his Provender: And, laſtly, that he may be well breathed, and ſound winded, thereby being enabled to hold out as occaſion ſhall require, you may at ſeaſonable times mix with his Provender the Powder of theſe following Seeds and Drugs, *&c. viz.* Cummin and Anniſeeds, Powder of Licoras and Elecampane-roots, Barberries, Brimſtone-flower, and the Roots of white Lillies, Hyſop, Horehound, Savin, Coltsfoot, the Seeds of Marſhmallows, Rue, and *Polipodium* of the Oak, and any of the like quality that will occaſion good Wind, and prevent Infections, purifie the Blood, and help the Liver in the performance of its office, that is, to rarifie Nutriment by a good digeſtion; but you muſt not mix over-much at a time, eſpecially when you firſt begin it, leſt he take diſguſt at the ſcent or taſte, and ſo reject his Provender; but increaſe the quantity by degrees, not giving him any above twice a Week, and then let it be Morning and Evening.

CHAP. XVIII.

An exact Deſcription of the Veins of a Horſe, how ſituate in the Body; as alſo of Blood-letting; and how, and upon what account of Sickneſs or other defect, they are to be opened, for the prevention of Death or Danger.

FRom the Liver, note, there ariſeth one large Vein, which, like a Conduit, ſupplies the reſt of the Branches, which are many in number, and ſpread themſelves throughout the Body like little Rivolets or Streams: And of theſe, two material ones are found in the Palate of the Mouth, above the firſt and third Barrs, which ought to be opened by a diſcreet Farrier, when the Horſe is afflicted with any Malignant Pain, or Diſeaſe in the Head or Stomach. Two more there are that are deſcending, which, from the lower part of the Eyes, deſcend to the Noſtrils, and are beſt opened when the Eyes are afflicted with any Diſtemper or Grie-

UMI - 1994

Grievance. Two others there are above his Eyes, which are called Temple-veins, because they run cross the Temples; and these are generally opened for cold Diseases in the Head. Two great ones there are likewise that run along the Wind-pipe, by the sides of it, from the uttermost Joynt of his Chaps, to the Breast, commonly called Neck-veins; and these are opened for sundry Diseases, being the most usual Veins that are opened. There are two other Veins that arise from between the Fore-legs, and are called Breast-veins, because they end on the top of the Breast; and these are opened in case of Surfeits, Feavers, or Heart-Sickness. Two others there are which ascend from the Fore-legs, but rise not so high as those before-mentioned; and these rest upon the foremost Bough of the Fore-leg, and are generally called Plat-veins; and are opened in case of Foundering, or any other grief or grievance in the Legs or Limbs. Other two there are which pass from the Elbow of the Fore-shoulder, down along the inside of the Fore-legs, being known by the name of Shank-veins, which are generally opened in case of Splents, Spavins, Mallenders, or Sallenders, *&c.* Then are there four Veins which run along the Fetlocks of the Horse, known by the name of the Shackle-veins; and these, although they are small, are yet important ones, and by bleeding cure the stiffness of the Joynts, and prevent Foundering. Then are there four more about the Corronets in his Hoofs, called Corronet-veins, and are opened for the Ring-bone and Surbating. In the Hoof are four more, which circle his Toes, called Toe-veins; and are opened for Fretting and Foundering. Two great Veins there are, that descending from his Stones, pass along the inside of his Thighs, to his Cambrils; and these are called Kidney-veins, and are opened with success for Diseases in the Reins and Kidneys. Two others there are, which, descending from above the hinder Cambrils, pass along on the inside of the Hinder-legs down to the Fetlocks, being called the Spavin-veins, and are seldom opened, unless in case of the Blood-spavin. Two Veins are likewise found in his Flanks, from whence they take their denomination, and are opened successfully for any Pain or Grief in the Fillets or Reins. Two Veins he

has in his Haunches, called by the name of Haunch-veins, and are opened in case of falling away, or consumption of the Flesh, Hideboundness, or the like. Two there are that run along the side of the Belly, from the Elbow to the Flank, and are called Spur-veins; and in case of Fretting, Belly-foundring, Spur-gall, Festring, or Swelling of the Belly or Flank, they are opened with success. In his Tail is one single Vein, called the Tail-vein, which is opened in case of sheading the Hair: So that in all there are found, as a compleat number of principal Veins, or as from which Blood is taken on sundry occasions, thirty-seven; in knowing which, any Man may understand how to let his Horse blood, in case of the before-mentioned Distempers, at such times as a Farrier is not at hand. Many other small Veins there are, but so inconsiderable to our purpose, that I shall not undertake them in this place, but proceed to speak somewhat of the Sinews, which is another Material part of this Noble Creature, worthy to be inspected.

CHAP. XIX.

A Discourse of the Sinews and their Situation, with their Use and Office; and what in that kind is to be observed as to the State of a Horse's Body, &c. *with a Description of the Bones*, &c.

AS for the Fountain or Source from whence the Sinews spring, and by which they are nourished, it is the Brain, for there passes through the hollow of the Neck one large Tendon or Sinew, which running along the Back-bone, continues its course even to the end of the Tail: And from this proceeds two small Branches, which passing through the Scull, fall down along the Horse's Cheeks to the points of the Nostrils. Two other Branches there are which pass through holes in the nether Chap, knitting it with the other, and so pass along by the great Teeth, meeting just beneath the nether Lip. Then are there twenty-eight small Strings, that running through the seven

UMI - 1994

Bones that compoſe the Neck, knit them together; and paſſing from thence, uſe their office in knitting; likewiſe the Chine even to the Strunt. Then are there two great ones that ſtretch themſelves over the Spade-bones, and then dividing into divers Branches, ſpread in a deſcending manner into the Legs, even into the Hoofs, and in their progreſs knit every Joynt together. Beſides what I have named, there are two main Sinews coming through two Holes to the flat Bones of the Hips or Huckle; and from thence, being divided into many Branches, paſs down into the hinder Legs, even into the Coffin of the Hoofs, binding all the Joynts firmly together. Now, above all theſe, there is one main Sinew or Ligament proceeding from the ſetting on of the Horſe's Neck, which paſſes along the Chine, and is one intire Sinew of near three Inches broad, being in its nature flat, and not having any Branch proceeding from it. And this is the great ſtrengthener of the Back and Neck of any Horſe, and holdeth the Shoulder-blade firm; ſo that in all, it's reckoned, a Horſe hath no leſs than thirty principal Sinews, whence a great number of other Sinews do proceed of leſſer note. But theſe which I have named are ſo uſeful in ſupporting the frame of the Body, that if any one of them are afflicted, the Horſe will be much afflicted, *&c.*

And now the next thing material to be known of this kind is, the Number of Bones, and their Situation; which, according to the beſt Account that has been given, take as followeth:

The full Number of Bones found in the Body of a Horſe are a hundred and ſeventy, *viz.* The upper part of the Head are computed two Bones; from the Forehead to the Noſe are two more; the nether Jaws are computed two Bones; the four Teeth are found to be twelve, and the Tuſhes four, and the Grinders twenty-four; the Bones in the Neck, from the Spade-bone to the Huckle-bone eight; from the Huckle-bones to the end of the Tail are accounted ſeven: Next, or at leaſt next to be conſidered, is a broad Bone, in which are found twelve Seams or Joynts: Then the two Spade-bones, and after them the Forcales or Canale-bones; and ſubſequent to theſe, thoſe that are commonly called

called the Marrow-bones, and from thence to the Knees two called the Thigh-bones, next to them two others, proceeding from thence to the Paſterns, called the Shank-bones, and ſo downward into the Hoof; other Bones, called the Supporters, in all ſixteen, though ſome of them are very ſmall. In the Breaſt there is a great Bone, whereunto thirty ſix Ribs, great and ſmall, are appendances; and to the Colume behind are fixed two Bones, and from the Molars to the Joynts you will find other two Bones, and two more towards the bending of the Ribs; from the bending of the Ribs, unto the Ribs, are two Bones, though very ſmall in compariſon of thoſe we account Capital ones; and from the Legs to the two Focils of the Legs, are to be found other two little Bones. And moreover obſerve, that from the Paſterns to the Hoof, and in the Hoof are ſixteen little Bones: all which are ruled and governed by Ligaments, and tends on to the beſt advantage or complacency in the frame of Nature, and are neceſſary to be known as to the frame and ſtation wherein they reſide, or are ſituate.

CHAP. XX.

Of Blood-letting in general, and how to know when and where it is convenient to let Blood, for preventing of Sickneſs, or recovery of Health.

TO let a Horſe Blood too often, decays Nature, and much weakens the Horſe; when on the other ſide, to long to defer it, gives corrupt Blood opportunity to create Diſeaſes that infect and afflict him; if it be done for health's ſake, without any ſign of apparent danger, then twice in a year ſufficient: The times beſt approved off for this office, are the end of *December*, and the beginning of *May*. Now ſome are of opinion, that there is no need of letting a Stone-horſe Blood, if he be uſed to cover Mares, unleſs ſome diſeaſe be apparent; and the reaſon they give is, that his ſpending does exhauſt his Blood

ſufficiently; but ſuch a reaſon is very weak, conſidering the Blood of which the Seed is made, by the working and operation of the Genital Parts, is the moſt ſpirited, and pure of all other; and that which ought to be taken away by Blood-letting, is commonly the moſt groſs and offenſive ſo that it will never turn to Seed, but corrupt by continuing in the Body, and create Diſeaſes; and therefore ought it to be drawn off, that the Veins being emptied, may fi with better Blood; nay, Blood-letting is coveted naturally by ſome Horſes; for the Horſes of *Poland* often let themſelves Bloud by often rubbing againſt a ſharp Poſt or Rock and ſo does the River *Horſe* in *Nilus*, from whoſe Examp 'tis held that Phlebotomy or Blood-letting came in uſe. O thers there are that will not have Geldings let Blood; an the reaſon they give is, that his Body, through the loſs o his Genetors, being infeebled, wants the Blood to ſuppo and corroborate it, and that conſumes faſter in him tha in a Stone-horſe: but this bears no weight, for the Bloo will increaſe according to the conſtitution of the Horſe an his feeding, and according to the heat or coldneſs of t Country the Horſe is bred in, the leſs or more Blood found in him.

The next material matter to be regarded, is, the exa time when it ought to be performed; and moſt hold beſt in the Morning, when the Horſe is faſting, an hour a ter he wakes or rouſes up: and then again have regard the Moon, it being in the encreaſe, if poſſible, but by means in the Sign where the Vein is ſituate that you ope leſt thereby your Horſe be weakned, for then the vi Spirits will iſſue with the Blood. And another regard to be had to his Age; for if he be very old, you muſt bleed him, unleſs upon ſome emergent occaſion, but ſuf his Blood to nouriſh him, that his fleſh may not wain decreaſe; and in all theſe caſes you muſt have regard t Horſe's Conſtitution, for ſome are more capable of loſ three pound of Blood, than others are two or one; or caſe of a Diſeaſe according as more or leſs is required, the Blood is more or leſs infected; and in ſuch a c no time nor ſeaſon is to be regarded, but as neceſſity quires; for many times Blood-letting in ſuch caſes i

means to ſave the Horſe, as deferring of it is to the deſtroy-
ng of him: and in theſe or the like caſes it ought to be
know in what Diſeaſes it is requiſite, and that it may in the
general be diſcovered by theſe Signs, *viz.*

If the Horſe's Eyes look red, and his Veins riſe and
well beyond the ordinary bounds, then is he oppreſſed
with too much Blood, or at leaſt that which is not good.
f you perceive by his itching, ſcrubbing himſelf, and un-
aſineſs, that there is a ſalt firey Humour contracted in the
eins, then let him Blood, which is more immediately
nown by the extraordinary itching of the Mane and Tail;
y rubbing of which, the Hair frequently ſheds, and the
kin peels off. If his Urine be red and high-coloured,
nd his Dung very hot, black and hard; if on his Back
here appear little Bubbles or Inflammations red and an-
ry; or if his Meat be not well digeſted, then they denote
he Horſe to abound with Blood, and ſtand in need of ha-
ng it drawn off to a degree, that his health may be pre-
rved or reſtored. If the Whites of his Eyes are tainted
ith yellowneſs, or the like happen to his upper or nei-
er Lip, it is requiſite to bleed him; for upon the hap-
ning of any of theſe Signs the Blood is diſordered, ſu-
er-abundant or corrupted, and ſome fatal ſickneſs is threat-
d; to prevent, or at leaſt mitigate which, there is no
tter way than Bleeding. And in the manner of letting
ood, when you have corded your Horſe conveniently,
at the Veins may appear full and fair, you may ſtrike
ur Fleam in the Neck-veins four Inches on this ſide the
ting-on of the Head; but the other Veins being ſmall,
u muſt open them with a Lancet, for fear of cutting
em through, and ſo conſequently injure the Nerves that
pport them. And thus much for Blood-letting, and the
ns of Bleeding, *&c.* From which I ſhall proceed to what
ates to Cures of all kinds, whether Internal Diſeaſes, or
ternal Sorrances, after the beſt and eaſieſt manner and
thod, according to the approved Rules and Directions of
ableſt Farriers and Horſleeches that are, and have been
dred famous for their Skill, not only in this, but in di-
s other Nations; and withal let you plainly underſtand
cauſe of the moſt chronical Diſeaſes as well as the

UMI - 1994

means to Cure them, rendring the method and manne
easie to the Practitioner, and advantageous to those th
trade in Horses, and keep them for their profit or pleasur
But before I absolutely enter upon them, there are a fe
things necessary to be considered, and especially five, *viz.*

1. To inform one's self to what Grief or Distemper
Horse is inclinable.

2. The cause from whence it proceeds, wether extern
or internal.

3. The Tokens and Symptoms by which the Distemper
known.

4. By what means the Causes accrue that create the D
stemper.

5. How to apply Remedies fitting to the Distempers a
Disorders.

And these are so absolutely necessary, that without suc
knowledge a perfect Cure cannot be wrought by any Fa
rier.

And now as for the Diseases and Grievances incident to
Horse, they are not a few; those that reckon the least, co
sent to sixty of different natures: and, to be plain, the
are many more which may be called Dependants on the
or indeed some of them no less dangerous.

CHAP. XXI.

*A Description of Diseases, Grievances, or Sorra
ces, incident to Horses, &c. to foresee them
sundry Signs and Tokens; and know when
they arise; with the Ways and Methods of Pr
venting, Redressing and Curing them, by a
proved Rules and Remedies.*

MAny are the Terms and Names given to Grievanc
and Sorrances, and these frequently take their d
nomination from the place of their situation, relating to t
parts of the Body, and chiefly arise or proceed from the

vil ſtate or habit of the Body, and defect of the Members, eſpecially when there happens a looſning and diviſion in the Unity, or a Diſſonance in the Temperature; and ſo we ſay when any diviſion or looſning happens in the Bone, it is a Fracture; if it happens in the Veins, it is a Rupture; and in the Fleſh, a Wound or Ulcer; in the Sinews it is termed the Cramp or Convultion; and in the Skin an Excoriation. And now obſerve, that in Cauterizing or Burning, which may be done two manner of ways, *viz.* with hot Oils, or Water, or with a hot Iron; as alſo in making Inciſion, or the like, that they ever be done with caution above or beneath the Vein or Sinew, and never upon them, leſt by the diſcommodity that may ariſe, the Horſe be rather damaged than furthered: And again, obſerve never to apply to Veins or Sinews any extraordinary Corroſives; and theſe we reckon ſo, are, *Arſnick*, *Sublimate-Mercury*, *Reſalgar*, *Oil of Vitriol*, *Tartar*, &c.

In caſe of Cauterizing, ever obſerve rather to launce with a hot Iron than a cold one; and rather cauterize than cut, becauſe by the heat the humours are driven back, which would otherwiſe render the Sore or Grief of long continuance; and by the product of a Sore in the original, you may know the Conſtitution of a Horſe; for if he be a ſanguine, a whitiſh watery Excreſſence will flow of an indifferent thickneſs; if Cholerick, a thin ſalt one, inclining to greeniſh; if Flegmatick, a kind of a gelied-water; and if Melancholick, then a groſs blackiſh moiſture, attended by a dry Scab or Scurf.

In caſe of Swelling or Tumours, it will be neceſſary with heed to mark the place they begin in, as alſo their progreſs and ending, that ſo the part of the Body afflicted with bad Humours may have Applications ſutable to remove them.

Now if it ſo happen that the Swellings or Tumours be not upon any maſter Vein or Sinew, or too near the vital Parts, then may Repercuſſive Medicines be uſed: but if ſo, then thoſe that are mollifying, to raiſe it gently by degrees, that ſo being ripened it may break of itſelf; or if neceſſity require it, be Lanced, that the Corruption paſſing away, ſuch things may be applied, that with a Lenitive ſoftneſs may heal the grief.

In case the swelling be hard, it is generally Corrosive and must have such Medicaments applied: but if soft, those of a more supple Nature will prevail, though many happen to be of a long continuance. And now to know whether a Swelling has been of a long continuance, press it with your finger; and if the dint continue after you have taken your finger away, then is it old, and of a long standing; but if the flesh suddenly return, then is it newly taken. If a Swelling or Sore be broken, and moderately matter, then it signifies a good Constitution, and that it mends apace; but if the Putrefaction greatly encrease, then it denotes a mass of bad Humours there contracted, which must by degrees be brought away; and many times in this or the like cases is Cauterizing actually or potentially used, that is, with hot Irons, or with Liquids, *&c.* above or beneath the Sore, to divert or keep back the Humour.

CHAP. XXII.

Excellent Receipts for the Cure of Diseases, &c. in Horses or Mares, according to the best Experience of Skilful Practitioners.

AS the Causes of Sickness are many, so are the Cures or Medicines wherewith they are redressed, and the Signs that fore-run and attend them, which I have given in Generals and Particulars. Yet seeing something of this kind may remain untouched, I shall take them in the way as I proceed:

The Glaunders, from what it proceeds, and how to Cure it.

The Glaunders is a distemper often gotten by over-riding, and suddain cooling upon heats; eating too much raw food at unseasonable times, or continuing in wet moorish ground, proceeding from a flegmatick Constitution: and this you may perceive before it take too firm a possession by a white matter issuing from the Horse's Nostrils, and his unseasonable snorting: And this Disease having its seat properly in the Head,

Take

Take the green Leaves of a Box-tree, an ounce of Anniſeeds, and the like quantity of Licoriſh-powder: ſteep them in Ale or new Milk, to the quantity of a quart; adding Treacle four ounces, and the like quantity of Olive-oyl: heat them well over a gentle fire, and with a horn give the Horſe the liquid part to drink in the morning faſting, as hot as may be well endured; then give him a moderate Courſe, and bringing him home, let him have a warm Maſh; cloath him up, and leave him in a warm Stable for the ſpace of two hours before you feed him.

The Quinzey in a Horſe, &c. what it is, and how to Cure it.

The Quinzey is a Diſtemper, occaſioned by flegmatick Humours, ſetling in the Neck and Throat, ſo the paſſage of the Breath is in a manner ſtopped, and the Beaſt obliged to breath with a more then ordinary pain and labour: To remove them then, and redreſs the grievance, after having bled him in the Neck-vein;

Take Marſhmallows, Groundſel, Camomil and Hart's tongue; bray them with a like quantity of Smallage, and fry them with Hogs-greaſe; ſo being very hot, apply them to the place which ought to be under the Chaul, and it will mollifie the ſwelling, and by degrees remove the obſtruction of the paſſage: Then take Roach-allom, Honey and white Dog's turd; diſſolve them with brown Sugar-candy in a quart of Milk; give it him hot, and ſo continue to do for a week, morning and evening; renewing likewiſe the Poltis once a day.

A Horſe's Bleeding at the Noſe, how to ſtay or prevent it.

This happens, eſpecially amongſt young Horſes, through the abundance of Blood, that through the free paſſage of the large Veins, aſcends into the Head; and paſſing to the thin Veins within the Noſtrils, either by its violent motion forces them, or by its corroſive quality eats them in ſunder; or it may accidentally happen by a ſtroak or violent ſtraining: To remedy which,

Take the Juyce of Nettles, mixed with Loaf-ſugar, and ſquirt it up the Horſe's Noſtrils, uſing at convenient times to burn under his Noſe Storax, Frankincenſe, or Linnen dipped in *Aqua-vitæ*, in a Chafing-diſh, the fume of which will oblige the Blood to retreat; or inſtead of Nettle-juyce, you may uſe that of Garlick, blowing up after it the Powder of dryed Rhubarb.

UMI - 1994

For Pains in the Teeth or Jaws.

Pains in the Teeth or Jaws of a Horſe are created by Wind or cold Rheums that often afflict the Marrow or Sinews which ſupport them; and are often known by the Horſe's Drivelling, holding open his Mouth, and defect in feeding: And in this caſe,

Take a good handful of the herb Bettony, ſeethe it in a quart of White-wine Vinegar till half be conſumed, then add an ounce of the Powder of Elecampane; waſh, with the liquid part, his Teeth and Gums, anointing his Jaws with Oyntment of Tobacco, lancing the Gums, and opening the Temple-vein on the ſide where the Pain is moſt predominant.

The Canker in the Noſe, what it is, and the Remedy.

The Canker in the Noſe proceeds from a virulent Humour contracted there, occaſioned by Inflamation: To cure this, or, indeed, one in any part of the Body,

Take of White-wine Vinegar a quart, Roach-allum two pounds, a pint of the Juyce of Plantane, and as much of that of Rue, with four ounces of Honey; boil them to the conſumption of a third part, and waſh the grieved part therewith, as hot as the Horſe will well endure it, morning and evening, and the Canker within a fortnight will decay.

A Remedy for the Chollick, Belly-ach, or Belly-binding.

The two firſt of theſe proceed from cold, raw, ſlimy Humours, ſettled in the Bowels, there occaſioning a fretting or ſhrinking up of the Bowels, or by a contraction of Windineſs, which ſtretcheth them out; and the latter by exceſſive heat or bad digeſtion: Now to remedy theſe,

Take four ounces of Dill-ſeed, or the Herb itſelf, if it may be gotten; and alſo two handfuls of May-weed: boil theſe in a Gallon of ſmall Beer, with a pound of brown Sugar, and give the Horſe a quart at a time, each morning faſting, for the ſpace of four days, ſuffering it to be luke-warm.

The Lasks, or Bloody-flux, and its Remedy.

This Diſtemper is an unnatural looſeneſs of the Body, contracted either by raw feeding, or a fretting of the Bowels, cauſed by Cholerick or fiery Humours, and a ſuperfluity of bad Blood, which not being ſtayed in time, will, for

for want of other Excrements, cauſe the Horſe to void Blood: To cure this,

Take a good handful of the Herb called Shepherd's purſe, and two ounces of the Seed of Woodroof; ſtamp them, and boyling them in three pints of Ale till it come to a quart; ſtrain out the liquid part, and give it him hot in a Drenching-horn, continuing ſo to do for three or four Mornings ſucceſſively.

The Botts, what they are, and their Cure.

The Botts are a ſhort thick Worm, like a Maggot, having black Heads, and are engendred through the corruption of heat and moiſture in the Maw or Bowels of a Horſe; where they gnaw and afflict him in a grievous manner, and may be diſcerned by his lifting up his feet to ſtrike at his Belly, and the ſmall Stomach he has to feed: The way to deſtroy them is thus;

Take Rue, Savin, Nightſhade, the Seeds of Ameos, each two ounces; bruiſe them well, and with Honey and Roach-allom make them into little balls, and buttering them over, ſuffer him to ſwallow two of them in the Morning faſting, and about an hour after give him of Salad-oyl and *Aqua-vitæ*, each a quarter of a pint, very hot; and after that let him ſtand another hour before you give him any Provender; and this Rule obſerve for a week together.

For the Shoulder-ſtrain, a good Remedy.

Having tied up the lame Leg, drive your Horſe till, by his ſtriving to go on three Legs, the Plat-vein appear; then let down his Leg, and bleed him on that ſide, having in a readineſs a Baſon with Salt in it to receive the Blood, ſtirring it to keep it from clotting; then having likewiſe an ounce of the Oyl of Turpentine, put it into half a pint of Beer or Ale, warm them well; and when he has bled a quart or more, as you ſee occaſion, nip the Orifice with a piece of Lead made in form for that purpoſe, and chafe the place grieved with the Oyl and Beer, and afterward with the Blood and Salt; then putting him into a warm Stable, draw the two fore-legs into an evenneſs with a Liſt or Girt, bending them ſtrait, and ſo permitting him to ſtand; or, if you think convenient, to keep his feet the firmer and evener, wedg them between the Shooe and

UMI - 1994

the Hoof with a flat ſtick, continuing to anoint and bathe him as often as occaſion requires, unbinding his Legs, and leading him each morning till you find the lameneſs decreaſe: And thus you may do for a Wrench or Diſtortion of the Shoulder.

Broken-wind, what it is, and to remedy it, if not paſt Cure.

The Breaking of the Wind is occaſioned by exceſſive Riding or Straining, or by bad Uſage after much Labour, or exceſſive Rheums falling upon the Lungs, and hindring them in the performance of their office, to that degree, that the cloſures of the Wind-pipe ſhrink up, or are reſtrained from their former pliableneſs: And to remedy this, if not too far gone,

Take the Soil or Dung of a Boar, or Barrow-Pig, dried, that it may be reduced to Powder, and of Anniſeeds an equal quantity; boil them in Milk or Whey, and give him a pint of it hot to drink every third Morning, cauſing him to Exerciſe moderately thereupon: or it would be better if you could get the Dung of a Hedge-hog, uſually called an Urching; the doſe to the pint of Milk is two ſpoonfuls of each of the Ingredients.

A Horſe Burnt by a Mare, how to Cure.

This Grief is to be obſerved by the Mattering of the Yard, *&c.* and the dullneſs of the Countenance of the Horſe. Which perceived, to remedy the Grievance,

Boil a quarter of a pound of Roach-allom in a pint of White-wine; and being reduced to a thinneſs, ſquirt part of it, blood-warm, up the Horſe's Yard with a Syringe; and by doing ſo once a day, for a week together, the Cauſe will ceaſe, and the Effects be no more.

For a dry Cough, Cold, Purſiveneſs, Broken-wind, or Shortneſs of Breath.

Theſe Diſtempers being occaſion'd by cold groſs humours, rawneſs of diet, over-much labour, unſeaſonably groſs feeding, and unwholſome airs which infect the Lungs:

Take an ounce of Rue-ſeeds, Tarr two ounces, and as much freſh Butter; mix them well together with the Powder of Licoriſh, Anniſeed, Nutmeg, and brown Sugar-candy, and make them into three Balls in equal potions; and when your Horſe is warm with motion or riding, having put into

into each Ball three or four Cloves of Garlick, oblige your Horſe to ſwallow them when he is faſting; and bringing him home, let him ſtand without Meat for the ſpace of an hour in a warm Stable.

If the former fail, as rarely it does, Take of Bacon-lard a piece to the breadth of four fingers, and every way as thick as long, if you can get it; but as for the thickneſs, two fingers may ſerve; then ſtop it with Cloves and Garlick, duſting it over with Powder of Licoriſh, Anniſeeds, Sugar-candy and Flower of Brimſtone, and cauſe him, in two long ſlices, to ſwallow it faſting, and ride him thereupon, that he caſt it not up: and do ſo every morning for a Week together, giving him after it a Glaſs of Malaga.

Now to make a Horſe in this caſe ſwallow, though againſt his will; Draw forth his tongue as far as is convenient, and put the potion down his throat beyond the roughneſs; and then ſuddenly letting go his tongue, he will ſwallow it down without taſting or ſcenting: and in ſo doing you muſt ever draw up his head to the rack that it may deſcend the better.

To reſtore decayed and putrefied Lungs.

The ſign of the Lungs being in this diſorder, is to be known by a faint Cough, and the caſting of putrefied matter out of his Mouth like ſmall pieces of red fleſh, eating his Provender with gredineſs. To redreſs this,

Take the Juyce of Purſlain, or for want of it, that of Houſleek, half a pint, Steel-duſt two ounces, Oyl of Roſes four ounces, of Tragcauthium one ounce, add to them a quart of Goat's Milk, and give it him hot at three times, keeping him for a while after faſting and in motion: And this you may uſe till you find his Breath become ſweet, and the Cough allayed; the which, if it be not too far gone, will be in a week's time. And the better to refreſh the vital parts, you may burn under his noſe *Storax*, *Galbanum* and *Myrrh*.

A dry Conſumption, its Remedy, &c.

This Diſeaſe is occaſioned by ſharp corroding humours deſcending from the head, and falling upon the lungs, by which they are many times ulcerated, and by their bad effects cauſe a macerating or waſting of the body, yet ſendeth

forth

forth no corruption at the nose, because the moisture is consumed by the heat: To remedy which,

Take a pint of the Juyce of Comfory, half a pint of Oyl of Roses, the Juyce of four Lemons, and an ounce of the Juyce of Rue; let them simper over a gentle fire, and add the Powder of Round-bithwort-roots two ounces, and an ounce of that of Ruburb, and give him these in two equal potions morning and evening.

The Breast-pain, from whence it proceeds, and how to Cure it.

This Disorder of the Body proceedeth from a superfluity of bloud, which presses the Heart, and gross indigested humours that make the like unnatural invasion upon the liver; and the signs to know when a Horse is so afflicted, are a stiff staggering and keeping together the fore-legs as it were, and but weakly proceeding in his pace, *&c.* his gate distorted and uneven, stifly, for the most part, holding up his head and neck, as not being well able to reach the ground; and moreover, you will observe him to groan and strain in his eating and drinking.

To cure this, which frequently ends in death, if not timely regarded, let him bloud in both the breast-veins; and when he has bled sufficiently, two quarts at least, chafe his breast and fore-body with Oyl of Peter, that the bloud may be drawn into the empty-veins, and so ease the vital parts of their oppression, and give him a pint of warm White-wine, with two ounces of *Diapente*: or if the pain afterward continue, which is very rare, you may rowel him.

Heart-sickness, or Antecor; *whence it proceeds, and how to remedy it.*

This Distemper being an enemy to the Heart, seems from thence to take its denomination, and is caused by a superfluity of the Bloud in Horses that are feed high, and are put to little or no labour; which Bloud, for want of motion, being corrupt, infects the Heart, and renders it sickish and languishing.

The Signs are a small swelling, rising at the bottom of the Breast, encreasing upward to the top of the Neck, whither if it arrive before it be prevented, death frequently issues; it is known also by his hanging his Head, loathing his food, and groaning through the oppression of pain. These things being observed,

Let

Let your Horſe Blood on either Plate-vein, or in the Neck, if the Swelling be riſen high; and having bled him freely, Take of the beſt Malmſey a quart, add to it two ounces of Sugar, and an ounce of beaten Cinamon; give it him to drink blood warm, and it will revive and cheriſh the heart by diſpelling the evil Vapours from the ſeats of Life; and after that wiſp him well over his Cloth, and let him reſt, giving him the next Morning the like doſe, and riding him gently.

Foundring in the Body, or Surfeiting, how occaſioned, together with the Remedy.

This Diſeaſe, according to the Skilful, is occaſioned by a contraction of Molten-greaſe and evil Humours which oppreſs the frame of the Body, and is taken by the bad management of thoſe that uſe the Horſe indiſcreetly; watering him when hot, or letting him upon a heat ſuddainly cool in a bad air, or moiſt place; by which Humours, together with the Molten-greaſe, have opportunity to contract themſelves into one Maſs, to that degree of Conſolidation, that Nature without extraordinary helps, is not capable of diſperſing or diſpelling them.

The Signs demonſtrating this Diſtemper or Grievance, are the ſtaring of the Hair, hanging of the Head, an unuſual Cough, ſtaggering, belching, the clinging up of the Belly, and riſing of the Back.

To remedy this Diſtemper, Take a handful of Mallows, as much Smallage, Camomil and Groundſel, an ounce of Alloes, two quarts of new Milk, and half a pound of brown Sugar; boil them together, and ſtrain out the liquid part, giving it the Horſe Clyſter-ways; and when it has cauſed him to empty ſufficiently, take a quart of Malmſey, or, for want of it, Canary, of Licoriſh, Anniſeeds and Cinamon beaten to Powder, each half an ounce; put them, with two ounces of beaten Sugar-candy, into the Wine, and give it the Horſe warm, keeping him afterward in motion, tho' in the Stable, for the ſpace of two hours, well cloathed and littered; after which give him two quarts of Oats, and a quart of ſplent Beans, well ſifted and ſprinkled with Beer, *&c.*

The

The Greedy Worm, or Hungry Evil; what it is, and how to be remedied or prevented.

This Diſtemper, or rather defect in a Horſe, has deceived many; for whereas they take it for a good ſign to ſee a Horſe feed haſtily, and be voracious, yet is it the cauſe of ſickneſs, and decay in the end, if not prevented; for the cauſe a Horſe is ſo haſty and large a feeder, is either by reaſon he has been a long time debarred from Meat, and ſo the Veins being open and empty, crave nutriment; or from too exceſſive a heat in the Stomach, that conſumes the moiſture and nutriment faſter than it can be reaſonably expected to digeſt: The firſt of theſe, if not prevented, creates Diſeaſes, and other diſorders, by the Veins, drawing the crude Digeſtion not perfected, and filling their Cavities with a groſs watry Humour, rather than good Bloud; and the latter by feeding the Heat (which otherwiſe would decay) that conſumes the radical moiſture.

The help for this is, firſt, feeding the Horſe by degrees, ſuffering a regular digeſtion; and the latter by giving him cooling things to allay the heat, and moderate the appetite, are the beſt things to reduce him to a due temperature and managed diet, as has been ſaid; but more particularly, give him a quart of Cream, a pint of White-wine boiled with a handful of Wood-ſorrel, and the like quantity of Scabeous or Mugwort, the liquid part only: Let him take it cold, and reſt upon it, and it will cloſe the Veins to that degree, that the digeſtion may be made perfect, as alſo it will allay the heat.

Yellow and Black Jaundice in a Horſe, the Cauſe and Cure, &c.

The Yellow Jaundice generally ariſes from the abundance of cholerick Humours contracted, which occaſion the overflowing of the Gall, and are great oppreſſors of the Body, and obſtructors of Health; and the ſigns are the yellowneſs of the Mouth-ſkin, inſides of the Lips and Eyes. There is another kind of this Diſeaſe that proceeds from Melancholly, and theſe are called the Black Jaundice, and have their original from obſtructions in the Liver-vein, which paſſeth to the Spleen, and conſequently hinders the Spleen from doing its proper office, by receiving only corrupted Bloud from the Liver; and ſo is obliged, by reaſon

ſon of its being ſurcharged, to caſt it back into the Veins; and this latter in caſe of death, as indeed being moſt dangerous, maſtereth the former; but a timely regard may remove them, as thus:

Take, after you have blouded your Horſe in the third Barr of the Mouth, and ounce of Turmerick, and half an ounce of Saffron, four or five Cloves, and ſix ſpoonfuls of ſtrong Vinegar, Long-pepper and Licoriſh, beaten fine, of each an ounce, with the like quantity of Burdock-roots; boil them in two quarts of Ale till a third, or at leaſt a fourth part be conſumed, and give it him to drink very hot; and in ſo doing you will find the bad Humours diſperſe, and by degrees loſing their force by the operation of Nature, and the conquering quality of the Medicament; but if it be too long delay'd, it many times runs beyond the help of Art.

Coſtiveneſs, from whence it proceeds, and its Remedy.

This Diſorder is a hardning of the Excrements in the Body, ſo that without great pain the Horſe cannot evacuate or void his dung; and this is often occaſioned by exceſs of Provender, inſomuch that Nature forces it into the Bowels before it be well digeſted in the ſtomach: or again, it happens by feeding altogether upon dry meats; the which, though wholſome and nouriſhing, contract notwithſtanding the Excrements by the extraordinary heat they occaſion; and it may likewiſe happen by exceſſive Faſting. To remedy which, you may give him a Clyſter made in this manner:

Take a handful of Marſhmallows, decoct them in Spring-water, not exceeding a quart; add to theſe half a pint of Salad-oil, and ſix ounces of freſh Butter, of *Benedicta Laxativa* an ounce, and force them warm up his Fundament, holding or tying cloſe his Tail, by bringing it with a cord between his Legs, obliging him to keep it in for the ſpace of an hour: And the better to make it work, give him a warm Marſh, and as ſoon as he has diſcharged it, give him in a Drenching-horn a potion made after this manner:

Take two ounces of Caſtle ſoap, diſſolve it in a pint of warm White-wine, and with it a quarter of a pint of Linſeed-oil, ſweetning them all with Sugar-candy, and give it him as hot as he can drink it.

The

UMI - 1994

The Cramp, or Convulsion in the Nerves or Sinews, how occasioned, together with the Remedy, &c.

These generally proceed from some bruise, wound or other hurt on the Nerves and Sinews, or excessive straining, especially when the Horse after a great heat by riding or servile labour suddenly cool'd.

This Grievance is known by the trembling of the Joynts, Nerves or Veins, or by their contracting to such a stubbornes or stiffnes, that, for a time, neither the Horse, nor those that attempt to help him are capable of bending them.

To Cure this, Take Camomil, Primrose-leaves, the Roots of Crowfeet and Cowslips, with the Branches of Fennel, Rosemary and Pimpernel; boil them in Running-water, and having pressed out the liquid part, bathe the place grieved with it exceeding hot, binding on the Herbs Poltis-ways with coarse Linnen, or bands made of Straw or Hay, and keeping him in a warm Stable, with good Provender, his Limbs will be restored, and rendred as before; and the better to hearten him, let him receive for a morning or two, the Yolk of an Egg in a glass of Canary.

The Mourning of the Chine, its Cause, and the Means to cure it.

This Grievance is caused by suddainly cooling upon excessive heats, standing in damp or wet places, or eating such things as turn to raw Humours; which falling upon the Liver and Lungs, frequently inflame or putrefie them, so that they occasion the Horse by defect of their office to fall down suddainly and dye: Therefore when you by any trembling or dullnes suspect this Grievance, let your Horse bloud, and having chafed him well,

Take Olive-oyl and Verjuyce, of each two ounces, the Juyce of Sellendine, and Powder of Elecampane-roots, of each an ounce; warm them a little, and tying his Head up to the Rack, pour them into his Nostrils, stopping them close after it, that he may be forced to sneeze and strain to cast it out; after which having an ounce of the Powder of Rhubarb heated in a pint of Canary, give it him in a Drenching-horn as hot as he can well endure it; and so use him each morning for a week together, and the bad Humours will be worked off.

Frenzy

Frenzy or Madneſs, its Cauſe, with the Means to remedy it according to the experienced way.

This Diſeaſe is very dangerous, and often terminates in death, and is occaſioned by hot and fiery humours unſeaſonably mixing with the bloud, which by its aſcending inflamation afflicts the brain, that principal ſeat of life: And this is known by the ſtaring of the Horſe, the diſtorting of his eyes, hanging of his ears, ſtaggering and giddineſs, his often crying and forſaking his meat; and if it be wrought to a height, his often beating himſelf againſt the poſts, manager, and other places he can conveniently come at; biting, ſtamping, and flying about; with many the like diſorders.

To remedy this, ſpeedily let him bloud in the temple-veins; and if he bleed not freely there, ſtrike him in the neck-veins; when having bled ſufficiently, Take the Roots of Gourds or Wild-cucumbers, black Hellebore, Rue and Mint, with *Virgo Paſtoris*, of each a handful, boil them in Beer or fair running Water, and give him the liquid part very warm; and doing ſo three our four times it will purifie and purge the Bloud: but if you ſuppoſe it too weak for the Horſe's conſtitution, you may diſſolve in it an ounce of well waſhed Allows. And obſerve in this caſe, above all things, to keep him warm.

The Falling-evil, its Cauſe and Cure.

This Diſtemper is cauſed by a vapour that oppreſſes or annoys the vital parts, rendring the frame of the body for a time ſenſleſs, and altogether unable to diſtinguiſh what befals it, and has its original from an evil habit of body; and its approach is frequently known by the coldneſs of the noſe and griſtles thereabout.

The ſpeedy, at leaſt the beſt Remedy, is to let him bloud on both the neck-veins, in the morning when he is faſting, and then prepare a doſe of Powder of dried Berries of Miſletoe, and the Powder of Hart's horn, each an ounce; of the Oil of Nutmeg and Pepper, each a dram: compound them in half a pint of Canary, and give it the Horſe, when you perceive the grief to be coming on him, as warm as may be.

The

The Sleeping-evil, what it is, and the way to remedy it.

This is a Diſtemper, frequently occaſioned by the over moiſtneſs of the brain, or rather a watry coldneſs contracted within the cells, which chills and numbs the brain, whereby the Horſe becomes dozed, heavy and ſtupid, ever deſirous to ſleep, yet ſtill troubled with reſtleſs dreams and diſorders, and owes its original to moiſt feeding in Marſhey-grounds, whereby abundance of phlegmatick and watry humours have been contracted: And in this caſe likewiſe letting bloud in both the neck-veins is much available. But further to perfect the cure,

Take Camomil and Mother-wort, of each a like quantity; boil them in a gallon of Running-water, with a pound of Treacle, and a handful of Bay-leaves, and give the Horſe a pint each morning faſting, as hot as he can endure it, keeping him very warm, and faſting for the ſpace of an hour after; and then of Malt or ſcalded Bran make him a warm Marſh.

The Horſe-Peſtilence, and its Cure.

The Peſtilence in Horſes is either contracted by bad feeding which occaſions a Corruption or Inflammation of the Bloud whereby the Heart is afflicted, or it happens by being in foggy and infectious Airs, or catched by Contagion: And in any of theſe caſes,

Take Lavender a handful, the like quantity of Rue and Wormwood; as alſo of Walnut-tree-leaves, and an ounce of Alloes; boil them in a quart of Water, or three pints of Milk, till half be conſumed; then add half a pound of freſh Butter, or rather, if you can get it, half a pint of the ſweeteſt Olive-oyl, and ſtraining out the liquid part, give it the Horſe faſting in the morning bloud-warm, repeating a freſh Doſe every other morning, for the ſpace of a week.

For Cheſt-foundring, the Remedy.

To know whether your Horſe be Cheſt-foundered, or not, obſerve him ſtanding; and if then he do as it were ſtand drawn up, or crimpling with his Body, or ſtragling, and covet much to lye down, running ſometimes backward in his going, then is it apparent he is afflicted with this Grievance: To Cure which,

Take

Take Oyl of Peter half an ounce, mix it with an ounce of the Oyl of Camomil; and ſo proportionably a greater quantity, as you ſee occaſion, and bathe the Breaſt with a hot Woollen-cloth; and when you have in that manner chafed it as well as you can, run a hot Iron over it to make it ſink into the Skin: do this twice or thrice, and give the Horſe a quarter of a pint of Salad-Oyl, and the like quantity of *Aqua-vitæ*, warmed and well mixed together over a gentle fire.

For an Obſtruction in the Bladder, or Windineſs in the Bowels, uſe this approved Medicine.

Of Cake or Caſtle-ſoap take twelve ounces, ſcrape it ſo that it may be rendred very ſmall, adding two ounces of *Dialthæa*; incorporate them well, and make them up into balls as big as Pigeons Eggs; and when you find your Horſe afflicted, as aforeſaid, diſſolve one of them in a pint of Ale or Beer, and give it him ſcalding-hot, or ſo hot as he can take it without danger, and it will force a paſſage for the Urine without much difficulty: This is alſo good for the Stone, or Gravel in the Kidneys.

The Pole-Evil, how to know and Cure.

The Pole-Evil is know by its growing bigger than ordinary on the top of the Head; where, if you find it large, take a hot Iron, and Sear it in a Circle, after the form of the Figure, till the Skin become as it were of a yellowiſh colour; then with a ſharp Iron make holes in it, one large one in the middle, ſmall ones circling it within the firſt Circle; the form of the Iron, which muſt not penetrate above half an Inch, you have in the Margin. The holes made as directed,

Take a piece of yellow Arſnick, to the bigneſs of a Pea, and divide that, or a ſomewhat larger quantity, that a part may be applied to every hole made, as aforeſaid and cover it over with black Soap, then with Hog's Lard and Verdegreaſe anoint the reſt of the place Seared, and cover it all over with a Cloth dipped in the Oyl of Turpentine; and

and ſo by the corroſive nature of the Arſnick, the contacted ſwelling will be ſo looſned, that with a little cutting or drawing off the bottom, the Core or Cauſe of the Grievance may be drawn out or taken away, and this frequently, eſpecially according to the Conſtitution of the Horſe, may be attempted in a week or ten days after the Application; and having waſhed the wound with Plantane-water, wherein a ſmall quantity of Allom has been diſſolved; anoint it with Oyl of Roſes, or Ointment of Tobacco, and cover it up cloſe from the Air, anointing it once a day, till the fleſh fill up the hollowneſs; and if proud fleſh appear, notwithſtanding ſcald it with Salt and Butter.

The Feſtula, how to diſcover and cure.

A Feſtula is the contraction and ſettlement of bad Humours, or infection into one place, occaſioning an ulcerous Tumour, and is beſt ſuppreſſed by Cauterizing in circling it, round to prevent its further ſpreading, and likewiſe to deny the Humours that feed its acceſs; and when you have with a hot Iron circled it as the former, prick it full of holes with a three ſquare ſharp Inſtrument; the Figure of which, and of the Circle, take notice of in the Margin, and ſo uſe it in all reſpects, as that of the Pole-Evil; if you find it very corrupt; but if it appear ſhallow, mitigate the Corroſives to half the quantity, and ſearch it in a ſhorter time, letting out the Corruption, if it will come forth by applying Lenitives, *&c.* And when you find it begin to heal, anoint it firſt with Oyl of Camomil, and after that take the effects of the fire quite away, with Ointment of Marſhmallows, beaten, with the White of an Egg, or *Spermaceti.*

Hard Kernels under the Throat, how to remove them.

Take half a pint of Brandy or *Aqua vitæ*, put into it a quarter of a pound of common Soap; boil them till they become thick as a Plaſter, and apply it plaſter-wiſe to the place grieved; and if no ſtore of corruption, or a contraction of evil humours attend thoſe Kernels, then will it ſink them,

them, ſo that they will not be offenſive; and if there be humours, it will break and diſperſe them.

For the Navel-gall, the Remedy.

Take an indifferent fine rag, dip it in Brandy and Sallad-oil, well incorporated over a gentle fire; bathe and ſupple well the place grieved; and to make it penetrate the better, run it over afterward with an exceeding hot cloth; and in often ſo doing the cure will be wrought.

For a Blow, Bruiſe, or the like Misfortune that cauſes a Swelling or Tumour, the Remedy.

If the ſwelling be about the head, let the Horſe bloud in the neck-vein, on that ſide the misfortune befel: which done, to prevent the Farcy, and the like,

Take of Anniſeeds, Rue, Turmerick and Red-ſage, each about an ounce; ſhread them out into a quart of Beer or Ale, and ſuffering them to infuſe therein for the ſpace of a night, preſs out the next morning the liquid part very hard, and give it him cold to drink, ſuffering him to faſt after it for the ſpace of four hours; then having in readineſs a Charge made of *Aqua vitæ* and Soap, ſpread it upon a Leather, ſo much as will cover the ſwelling, and your expectation will be anſwered.

The Scratches, their Remedy.

The Scratches are a troubleſome Sorrance found upon the hinder heels of a Horſe, on the paſterns and ſomewhat above, and are cauſed by the breaking out of evil humours ſetling there: To cure which,

Take of Hen's dung and Black-ſoap, each two ounces; incorporate them with Hog's greaſe, or Neat's foot-oil, over a gentle fire, till they become an Ointment: then, having dried and rubbed the Horſe's heels, anoint them with it, and bind on the Ointment, or ſwathe the legs with a warm cloth, not ſuffering the Horſe to come into the water. And if this prove not a ſufficient Remedy at ſeveral times uſing, try this more powerful,

Take Beef-broth and bathe his legs well therewith over night, and rubbing them clean the next morning, take two ounces of Deer's ſuet, the like quantity of Speck-oil, and an ounce of Verdegreaſe; beat them well together in half a pint of Train-oil; put them into an earthen-pot on a gentle fire,

UMI - 1994

fire, and ſtir them well together, and anoint the place grieved, chafing it in with a hot cloth, keeping him out of the water and dirty ways.

For Foot-foundring, a Remedy.

Having found by the lameneſs or crimpling of your Horſe that he is foundred, which moſtly happens by unſeaſonably travelling in dirty ways, and not being well regarded upon his ſetting up; bleed him a little in the thigh, or if you can conveniently, in the fetlock-vein, and ſet on his ſhoe hollow, the wool or cotton may be thruſt between as occaſion requires it; then

Take *Venice*-Turpentine, and ſpread it upon a lock or wad thereof, putting it with a flat ſtick between the ſhoe and the hoof, and the latter being well pared, keeping it in with a piece of leather, and renewing it every three days; and as you ſee his hoof grow again, pare him even to the quick, applying the Plaiſter, and ſuffering him to run in ſoft, tho not in dirty or miery ground.

For the Canker in the Head, a Remedy.

When you find by the rawneſs and yellow matter that this Grievance has ſeized your Horſe; to remedy it before it grow deſperate,

Take a pint of Olive-oil, of *Burgundia*-piteh three ounces, and an ounce of waſhed Turpentine; put them all into a pipkin, and mix them together over a gentle fire; and when they are mixed, add an ounce of Verdigreaſe, and boil them up to the thickneſs of a ſalve, ever keeping the matter ſtirring; and making a Plaiſter apply it to the Canker, according to the advantage of the place where it is ſituate, having firſt rubbed off the ſcurf or ſcales; and if ſo it happen to be in the noſtrils, having waſhed it with a ſponge at the end of a ſtick, dipped in ſalt and vinegar, to cleanſe it, wet the ſalve, and dipping a feather therein, anoint the place grieved with it when warm, and capable of ſticking by the like application.

For the Mangey, or dry Scurvey, a Remedy.

Having cleanſed the place by ſcraping off the ſcurf or ſcabs, that it may lie open to the operation of the Medicament or Application,

Take a quarter of a pint of Strong-beer, with two ounces of

of the Oil of Turpentine, and well mixing them by ſhaking in a viol-glaſs; annoint the place grieved with a feather, tying up your Horſe to prevent his unruſineſs, during your ſo doing, and till the ſharpneſs of its operation be over, with a ſtrong cord to the rack; then blow upon it Powder of Bole-armorick, and bind the Sorrance gently with a cloth: this you may repeat once a Week, as often as you ſee occaſion; and when it heals, which will be ſignified by the returning of the Hair, then you may ſupple it with Ointment of Marſh-mallows, and waſh it with water wherein Charvil has been concocted or boiled.

The Vives, *and their Remedy.*

The *Vives* are a troubleſome Diſtemper, or Grievance that frequently happen under the Ears of a Horſe, and many times endanger his Life: For which, in the firſt place, let your Horſe Bloud in both the Neck-veins, then placing your Bernacles upon his Noſe, to make him leſs ſenſible of pain, ſhape an Iron as you ſee the form in the Margin, ſuffering the edges to be about the thickneſs of a half Crown; heat it red hot and ſcarifie the place upon the middle of the ſwelling, from the root of the Ears, downwards to the loweſt part thereof, in the form annexed, till you perceive the Skin of a yellowiſh colour, then deſiſt; and having paſſed over the place with a cloth, anoint it with Oyl of Roſes, or, for want of that, freſh Butter or Hog's Lard, keeping the place ſupple by often repeating it; as alſo the Horſe in a warm Stable, with good Diet.

For Swanking in the Back, or a Strain in the Kidneys, cauſed by indiſcreet Riding, or over Burthening.

Your Horſe being under theſe circumſtances, mix well together two ounces of Nerve-oyl, and the like quantity of the Oyl of Turpentine, over a gentle fire; and having a Sheep's-

Sheep's skin newly stripped off, rub it with a brush or cloth all over the fleshy side, and clapping the Skin upon the Horse's Back, especially where the Grief is, bind it on with broad Surfingles very strait, bracing it with a Crupper behind, and Str: ps before; and give the Horse the Juyce of Pelletory, sweetned with Sugar-candy, half a pint warm in a pint of Ale.

For Pains or Foulneß in the Reins or Kidneys, an excellent Scowring.

Take Treacle-jean, two ounces, and Rhubarb in Powder half an ounce, with an ounce of the Juyce of Hysop to qualifie them: put these into a pint of Beer or Ale, when very hot, and give it the Horse fasting.

A present Relief for an Attaint, or Over-reach on the Heel, or the like.

This mis-hap cometh to pass when the Horse with the Toe of his hinder Shoe strikes the Heel just at the setting on of the Hoof, commonly called the Over-reach; and if not timely regarded, may prove dangerous, for being not only a breaking of the flesh, but a strong bruise, it sometimes by its rankling perishes the Sinews, or otherwise renders the Horse lame or disabled: and in this case clip away the hair, and the batter'd skin or flesh, which you will find hang loose and useless; and having so done, wash the dirt out of it with Water and Salt, after which anoint it with Neats-foot Oyl, or Mutton Suet; and then dip a wad of Flax in the Whites of Eggs, and bind it hard with a list or soft string to the place, and renew it till you find the Sorrance healed, which will be in a week or thereabouts.

For the Water-Falcion, a Remedy.

This Distemper is occasioned by the Horse's unwholesome feeding in low wet Ground, where the moisture is great, insomuch that with the Grass the Horse takes in extraordinary quantities, which frequently occasions soft swellings under the Belly and Chaps.

To Cure this, Work a piece of Iron in the fashion of a Fleam, and having heated it red hot, strike it through the Skin of the Swellings, and the contracted Humours will flow thence, being an oyly-water of colour yellowish, and some-

ſometimes greyiſh; and then there needs no more than to waſh it with Chamber-lye, as hot as can be well endured, having mixed with it the infuſion of Tobacco-ſtalks, and Powder of Bole-armorick.

A Cure for the Sorrance, called the Ring-bone.

This Ring-bone is an Excreſſence, generally growing upon the Inſtep, juſt above the Hoof, on the fore part of the hinder Leg, and is many times as big as a Pigeon's Egg: To remove this,

Tye up the contrary Leg of your Horſe, and ſtrike with a ſharp Bodkin, according to the form in the Margin, five or ſix holes in the Ring-bone, at the edge of it, ſuffering the holes to be of an equal diſtance, and put into them Arſnick or white Mercury, beaten into fine Powder, and with the Skin of Mutton-ſuet bind the Sorrance up for the ſpace of a day and a night, and it will eat away, by its corroſive quality, the foundation, ſo that the Ring-bone being anointed with Supplements, will fall off or curmble away.

For the Ives, a Remedy.

This Diſtemper is found to grow like a Roll between the Neck and the hinder part of the Jaw-bone, and is of dangerous conſequence if it aſcend to the roots of the Ears.

The ſpeedieſt remedy for theſe is to let the Horſe bleed well in the Neck-vein, then take Pepper, Hog's Lard and Vinegar, each half an ounce, with a ſpoonful of the Juyce of Savin; make them up as thick as may be, put one half of them into one Ear, and the reſt into the other, ſtop them with Lint, ſtitching up the Ears ſo faſt, that he cannot ſhake them out for the ſpace of twenty four hours, and they will diſtil into the Head an operative quinteſſence that will diſſolve the Swelling.

To take off the Film or Skin from a Horſe's Eye.

To remove this Obſtruction to the ſight, Take a piece of lean hung Beef, or other ſalt Beef; dry it in an Oven, to that degree, that it may be reduced to Powder, and do the like to a ſtick of Licoriſh, ſo take of them an equal

UMI - 1994

quantity, and a third part of burnt Roach-allom: mix them well, and each Morning blow with a Quill about a Penny-weight into the Horſe's Eye, drawing the Lids together, if he will ſuffer it, the better to keep in the Powder; and in ſo doing, every other day for five or ſix days together, the Film will vaniſh. This likewiſe will remove the Pin and Web.

A Mallender, the Remedy to Cure it.

Having rubbed it well with a Cloth, mix Soap with red Mercury precipitate; and having anointed the place grieved therewith, take away the Hair; and having four days ſucceſſively anointed it in the ſame manner, afterwards uſe mollifying Oyls or Oyntments to take away the heat of the former Unguent; and then waſh the place with Urine or Vinegar till it be reſtored.

For the Palſie or Apoplexy, a Remedy.

Theſe Diſtempers are occaſioned by the Nerves and Sinews, as alſo the Brain being afflicted with bad Humours or aſcending Vapours; and the ſigns are the ſtiffneſs of the Neck and hinder parts, the hardneſs of his Flanks, and the dulneſs of his Eyes. To remedy which,

Take the Oyl of Peter, and chafe it into thoſe parts you perceive to be afflicted; force it for its more ſpeedy penetration, with an Iron indifferently hot, and, after that, give him half a Pint of Pennyroyal-water, ſweetned with Sugar, and cover him up warm: you may, if you can oblige him to lye down, cover him with the reeking Litter, and gently twiſt a Thumb-band of the ſame all over his Neck.

A Farcion in the Head and Neck to Cure.

For this Diſtemper, proceeding from corrupt Humours, the Neck-veins muſt be breathed: Then mix the Juyce of Houſleek and Hemlock a like quantity, not exceeding two ſpoonfuls; adding a ſpoonful of Olive-oyl, and dividing them into equal potions, put a half into each Ear, ſtopping it in with Cotton or Lint, and tye up the Ears for twenty four Hours, giving him at the end of three Hours warm Maſh, with a few Coriander-ſeeds in it.

A Lineament to cleanſe a Wound, new or old.

Take Elder-roots dry, and beat them to Powder, and beil the Powder with Honey, and a little Allom-water, and make a Peſſary or Lineament; and dipping it therein when blood

blood-warm, wrap it round your Proble, and gently cleanse the Wound; washing it likewise with Water, and it will cause it to fill with flesh.

For Kibed-heels, commonly called the Mules, *a Remedy.*

These Sorrances are no other than dry Scabs breeding upon the Horse's Heels, and so inward to the Fetlock, in long chinks, chops and creases, *&c.* and the occasion is going in wet and dirty ground, and then heated without any regard or good looking to, which makes even a good Horse, when so afflicted, stiff and unfit for service: To remedy which,

Take calcined Tartar, and dissolve it in Water; and when it is congealed in the nature of Salt, mix it with Soap, and the Oyl of Tobacco, and with it anoint the Sorrance, washing it before and after with strong Beef-broth, and in four or five days, with this continuance, they will be well, especially if the Chops or Rifts are not exceeding deep.

The Quitter-bone; what it is, with its Remedy.

The Quitter-bone is either occasioned through the fretting or corroding of Gravel under the Shooe; or by an unfortunate or careless prick with a Nail left unregarded against the Sinews, which causes the Humour thereby contracted to move upwards, and break out in a round hard swelling on the Corronet of the Hoof, and in four or five days will it break and send forth Matter from a deep hole like an Ulcer, and is in it self very dangerous and troublesome; the best way to sink or destroy it, is to Cauterize it with a hot Iron, made in the fashion of a Half-moon; as thus: Let it be one almost round, and quite cross the middle overthwart; then prick full of holes an equal distance from each other, and put in Arsenick or Mercury, covering it over with Soap or Butter, binding it down with a Plaster for the space of two days; and then, if you find it black, the effects are wrought by the Poyson, insomuch that you may venture to take away the Core, though it hang a little by the Grisle, and lint the hole

UMI - 1994

with a Lint dipped in Verdigreaſe and Honey well boiled together, anointing the parts about it with Hogs Lard as a Supplement till it be well.

An excellent Cure for the Blood-ſpavin, &c.

Take up, and knit the Vein above the Grievance; and having divided it, take of Linſeed a Pint, bruiſe it well, and fry it in a Pan with new Cow-dung; and add more, four Ounces of Hog's Lard, and two of the Juyce of Hemlock; and ſo in the form of a Cataplaſm apply it, renewing it every day, and it will cauſe the Sore to come to a head, and then, by breaking it, brings away the Corruption.

For a Neather, Attaint, or Over-reach in the Paſtern-joint.

This Sorrance is known by a little gellied Bladder on the hollow of the Paſtern-joint, not much differing from a Wind-gall; which though many times not to be ſeen at a diſtance, yet may it be found and known by feeling. To cure or remove this,

Take a ſmall Cord or Liſt, and rowl it ſomewhat ſtrait from the Knee to the Neather-joint, and then with a Fleam let out the Corrupt Matter: which being preſſed out,

Take the Whites of four Eggs, a handful of Bay-ſalt, and two Ounces of the Juyce of Hemlock; mix them well together, and dipping a Rag into them, or rather a Wad of Flax, having firſt unbound the String, lay it on the place where the Swelling was and bind it ſoftly on; and ſo continue to renew it for the ſpace of four or five days.

For a putrified Fruſh, the Cure.

Having well waſhed and cleanſed the Foot with Man's Urine, take of beaten Allom a Pound, and put it into a Quart of the ſame Urine; and gathering a good quantity of green Nettles, dry them ſo that they may without difficulty be beaten into Powder: do the like by Pepper; and when you have, after Travel, or any Exerciſe, waſhed the place grieved with the Urine, in which the Allom is diſſolved, blow the Powder upon it, and ſo bind it up: And by doing this frequently, you will find the effects anſwerable to your expectation.

To diſſolve the Humours, and thereby anticipate Diſeaſes.

Take Sage, Roſemary, Wormwood, the Bark of the Ho

of an Elm, or the Leaves of the Pine and Wormwood, of each a handful: ſtamp or ſhread them, and then boil them in the Oyl of Linſeed, till they, being preſſed, become the thickneſs of an Ointment; and with it, as hot as may be, chafe and rub the place where you perceive the Humours to ſettle or begin to draw together: and by often ſo doing they will diſperſe. Figs and Salt boiled to Gelly, with the Juyce of Nettles and Elder, have in many caſes the ſame Effects.

To ſoften any hard Swelling, or contracted Hardneſs.

Take of Neats-foot-oyl a Quart, of the Juyce of Coleworts half a Pint, of the Marrow of Hogs Feet two Ounces, and an Ounce of the Oyl of Cyprus, with half a handful of the Roots of Mallows bruiſed: boil or heat them over a gentle Fire till they incorporate and become an Ointment; then, the Roots being taken away, put it up into a Gally-pot, and as often as you ſee occaſion uſe it hot to the grieved place.

For the Splint, Wind-gall, or Bladders of Gelly, in or about any of the Joints ſubject thereto.

Take Bees-wax a Pound, Per-roſin half a Pound, *Galbanum* two Ounces, *Sal-Armoniack* an Ounce, *Coſtus* three Ounces, *Myrrh Secundary* a Pound: bruiſe and melt them together till they are well incorporated; and ſo, being made into a Salve or thick Ointment, uſe it Plaſter-wiſe, by applying it to the Grievance, and you will ſoon find it effectual.

To cleanſe any putrified, or other Sore, the beſt way.

Take Salad-oyl and tryed Hogs Lard of each a Pound; Turpentine and White-wax of each four Ounces, and ſix Ounces of Allom-powder, and a quarter of a Pint of the Juyce of Rue: make them into an Ointment over a gentle Fire, and dreſs the Wound therewith, as you ſee occaſion, and it will not only cleanſe it, but fill it with ſound fleſh.

A Horſe Planet-ſtruck, how to Cure.

This Diſtemper takes a Horſe's Limbs away on a ſudden, ſo that they remain for a good time in the ſame poſture they did at the time of the ſeizure, he not being able to move them: And this, though it is by the Engliſh called *Planet-*

MI - 1994

ſtruck, and by the French *Surprius*, yet it is no other than the effects of heat and cold; and whether of theſe it is, may be thus perceived:

If it be cold, then is it diſcerned ſometime before by his ſnuffling and rattling in the Head, which denotes that cold phlegmatick Humours do aſſault the Brain: And if from heat, then it may be perceived by the dryneſs of Tongue, the ſcorching of the Breath, clear breathing, and the like, then is the Malady in the blood, compoſed of Crudities and groſs Humours; for the firſt, anoint his Temples with the Oyl of *Petrolum*, and give him an ounce of *Leſerpitum* in a pint of Canary, and half a pint of Olive-oyl, as warm as may be: and for the latter, having blouded your Horſe, give him Water and Honey, with an ounce of *Leſerpitum*, and two ounces of Melion-ſeed bruiſed to Powder, and let his Diet be moderate, eſpecially if his body abound with groſs humours, that by a ſpare diet they may waſte and conſume; though ſometimes indeed by extream faſting this Diſtemper happens, and then good feeding, though by degrees, is the beſt remedy.

For the Poze, or exceſſive Cold, a Remedy.

Take conſerve of Ellecampane, or elſe the Herb, bruiſe or diſſolve it in a pint of Mallaga; then add an ounce of beaten Ginger and Powder of Roſemary; and having well warmed them over a fire, give them the Horſe to drink, and ſo continue to do every other morning for a week.

To remedy or cure Hideboundneſs in a Horſe.

This diſorder of Body you ſhall know by finding the Skin of your Horſe cleave to his Ribs and Back-bone, ſo that you cannot without much difficulty take it up; and this proceeds from a pining or waſting, by reaſon of ſome inward Diſtemper of Body, or by having been bad kept, bad rid, or ſuffered upon a Heat to ſtand much in rainy weather, and be afterward unſeaſonably dryed: To remedy which defect, and render his Skin looſe and plyable, ſo that he may thrive and recover his ſtrength,

Take of Cummin and Anniſeeds, each two ounces, the Powder of Licoriſh an ounce, Flower of Brimſtone half an ounce, and Oil of Roſes a quarter of a pint; mix theſe together, and heating them well in a quart of Ale, give them the

the Horſe to drink morning and evening for the ſpace of a week, and the remedy will prove its ſufficiency.

For a wet inward Cough, a Remedy.

This Diſorder proceeds from the Horſe's being too much in damp foggy Airs, whereby groſs Humours are ingendred; which converting to Rheums, fall in ſuch abundance upon the Lungs, that they, as it were, ſtifle and overwhelm them in ſuch a manner, as renders them almoſt uncapable of performing their Office; ſo that the ſound by that means ſeems to be inward: Now to remedy this, and prevent the danger,

Boil a peck of Barley to a Maſh or Pulp, then add to it Licoriſh-powder two ounces, Anniſeed and Carroway-ſeeds, of each an ounce, ſliced Dates, or blew Figs, half a pound, Sugar-candy a pound, Turmerick three ounces, and two Roots of Garlick, with a quart of Olive-oyl; and when they are boiled to a Maſh, preſs out the liquid part between two Cheeſe-fats, and give him a pint of it hot for ſix mornings together, and ſoon after exerciſe him ſmartly, the weather being dry, and the ground good.

For a dangerous Cough, commonly called the Dry Cough.

This Diſtemper proceeds from bad feeding, or unſeaſonable labour, which cauſes the cholerick Humour to abound, and fall upon the Lungs, in a hot, tough, yellow flegm, which clings them up as it were, ſo that the Horſe cannot breathe without pain; and tho' he ſeldom Coughs, yet when he does, it is performed with a hollow ſound, and much violence: Now to remedy this,

Take a handful of Camomil, and the like quantity of the herb Melliot, two ounces of Licoriſh-powder, and three ounces of the Conſerve of Red Roſes, a quarter of a pound of Honey, and two ounces of Allom; boil them in Water, wherein four ounces of Camphire has been diſſolved, and give him the liquid part to drink it as hot as he may well endure it, keeping him for two hours after faſting, and beware he catch not cold.

For the Yard of a Horſe falling, a Remedy.

This happens to a Horſe when he is grown feeble, either by over-labouring, or bad feeding, which cauſe a bad reſolution in the Muſcles and Tendons, ſo that they refuſe their office of ſupport: And in this caſe,

Take a gallon of Water, boil in it two handfuls of Bay-ſalt, half a pound of Carrot-ſeed, a good handful of Mug-wort, and the like quantity of Bay-leaves; then ſtrain out the liquid part, and add a quart of old Mallago, and give him this to drink hot, rubbing his Yard with Vinegar, wherein Nettle-ſeeds and Burdock-ſeeds have been concocted.

To prevent the Mattering of the Yard.

This happens to Horſes of a hot Conſtitution, eſpecially after covering; and firſt appears by the ſwelling of the end of the Yard, and his being thereby rendred uncapable of drawing it into his Sheath, when ſoon after you will perceive much filthy Matter iſſue from thence; at what time diſſolve half a pound of Allom in a pint of White-wine, and with a Syringe inject it warm into the Yard, whereby the Yard will not only be ſcowred and cooled, but the Humours be driven back and diſperſed.

Of the Diſeaſes incident moſtly to Mares, and known by the name of the Peſtilent-conſumption.

This Diſtemper happens to a Mare when ſhe is near her Foaling-time, by reaſon of a Flegmatick Humour that contracts about the Matrix, occaſioned by groſs Feeding, and is known by her dulneſs, pining, and deſire to be Laid, and the like: to redreſs which,

Take a pint of *Aqua-vitæ*, half an ounce of Tobacco, and a ſprig or two of Spurg-Lawrel; boil them together, and then ſtraining out the liquid part, give it her faſting, and it will oblige her to caſt out the Maſs of Flegm, or at leaſt the cauſe that diſturbs her: But by reaſon ſhe will be ſomewhat ſickiſh when ſhe has caſt, Give her half a pint of Salad-oyl, and the like quantity of Canary, and keep her in a warm Stable, with Maſhes and good dry Meat a day or two.

How a Mare that is ſubject to caſt her Foal ought to be uſed.

In this caſe there is more than one Cauſe to be taken notice of, which ſubjects a Mare to caſt her Foal untimely, ſometimes dead, and ſometimes alive; as hard Wintering, unwholſome lodging, over-riding, ſudden ſtrains, or unhappy blows on the back, leaping hedges, or the like; together with too much fatneſs, or ſubjection to groſs humours, many

times

times to the endangering of their lives: Therefore when you perceive her near her time, bring her into a warm Stable, and

Take an ounce of *Diapente*, an ounce of *Sarſaparilla*, three grains of Musk, and a penny-worth of Fennel-ſeeds; infuſe them in a pint of Muſcadel, and give them a heating over a gentle fire, and ſuffer the Mare to drink the liquid part faſting; then dip your hand in the Oyl of Myrrh, and thruſt it into her Shape, and give her wholeſome Diet and good Litter; or this may be done, with ſucceſs, at the time of her Foaling, eſpecially if you perceive difficulty therein, and it will be much available in rendring her an eaſie delivery.

How to oblige a Mare to Caſt her Foal.

Now, on the contrary, if you imagine the Foal your Mare goes with is not worth your rearing, or that ſhe has taken Horſe contrary to your deſire; then boil a good quantity of Savin in two quarts of Milk, adding an ounce of Rhubarb and a ſmall quantity of Wood-aſhes, and when they are ſufficiently boiled, ſtrain out the liquid part, and give it the Mare to drink very hot, and then give her a conſiderable heat; and in ſo doing two or three mornings, the buſineſs will be effected. But conſider withal, that you look well to your Mare, leaſt you loſe both, for ſhe muſt for a week afterward be kept in the Stable, and that very warm, and with Maſhes of ſweet Malt-bran and Barley every other morning.

Of the ſeveral Feavers in a Horſe, and how to Cure them, &c.

There are divers Feavers that frequently poſſeſs the Body of a Horſe, and that at different times, as the *Quotidian*, *Tertian* and *Quartan*, and theſe are occaſioned by groſs Humours contracted in the Bloud, that inflame and diſorder the Frame, and happen according to the circulation of the Blood, or denomination of Humours.

As for the firſt of theſe, it is ever the moſt violent, but never laſteth long, and moſt frequently it cometh in the Sping, when the Blood begins to encreaſe, eſpecially to Colts and young Horſes.

The ſigns that fore-run this, are the watering of the Eyes, and a redneſs as if they were Bloud-ſhotten, ſhort pantings,

hot breath, a loathing or leaving of Provender, ſtiffneſs in the Joynts, and unwillingneſs to labour; and if it ſo happen that it befal him at eight of the clock the one day, you may expect it at four the next day, and the reaſon that is given, is the ebbing and flowing of the Blood, and its circulation. To rid him of this troubleſome Companion, give him, as ſoon as you perceive it to begin, a warm Maſh, and keep him in motion, though in the Stable, for the ſpace of an hour or more; then rub him exceeding well, and

Take two quarts of Ale, a good handful of Worm-wood, an ounce of Long-pepper, Venice-treacle two ounces, and of Grains an ounce; add to theſe an ounce of the Flower of Brimſtone, and as much Rue dryed and rubbed into Powder; heat it hot, and give him it at twice, about the ſpace of two hours difference between each other.

The *Tertian* Feaver is much the ſame in quality and condition with what I have named, and the Symptoms the ſame, though it ſomewhat more than the other participates of the Ague, for it at firſt takes him with a kind of a ſhaking; wherefore when you obſerve its approach,

Take of Stone-crop, an Herb ſo called, two handfuls; bruiſe it, and ſtrain the Juyce into two quarts of Ale; drop into it then an ounce of the Oyl of Myrrh, and an ounce of Ginger beaten into Powder; make them hot, and give them the Horſe to drink, ſweetned with Sugar-candy, and then rack him a round pace in wholeſome Air; but do not ſweat him, that he thereby may be endangered, by contracting a Cold, obſerving to let him drink no cold Water till ſuch time as you find the Fit entirely gone, and that he has ſettled his Body by eating two quarts of the beſt dried Oats.

As for the *Quartan* Feaver, it is much of the nature of the two former, only it alters the day, and often continues longer; for if a ſpeedy remedy be not had, it frequently continues, at divers times, for the ſpace of half a Year, or longer; and if this happen in the Fall of the Leaf, it will be neceſſary to let Bloud; which done, give your Horſe what is hereafter directed,

Take Oyl of Bays an ounce, Colts-foot the Herb, a good handful, Knot-graſs-roots, or Scutvey-graſs-roots the like quantity, Lavender-flower, or dryed Lavender, a handful;

boil

boil them in Ale or White-wine, and give him the liquid part, ordering him as for the former.

For any Diſeaſe and Stoppage in the Liver.

The Obſtructions in the Liver frequently happen through exceſs of Humours, that not capable of being digeſted into good and wholeſome Blood, clog and hinder the cavities of the Paſſages, and by that means cauſe Pains and Sickneſs. Now, to remove theſe Humours, known by the dulneſs of the countenance, hanging of the head, often ſtraining, and inward groaning,

Take Agrimony, Camomil, Fumitory, Purſley, Wormwood, Succory, Endive, the Seeds of Lupins, and Flowers of Mayweed, a handful; Licoriſh, Gentian and Spikenard, of each an ounce: bruiſe them well, and boil them in a quantity ſufficient of Syder or Perry, and give it the Horſe very warm, and let him walk thereupon for the ſpace of an Hour after; and for a Fortnight after be ſparing in his Diet, that the Humours by this means may diſperſe and conſume.

For a Botch or Sorrance in the Groin of a Horſe, a good Cure.

When by the tumouroufneſs of the Fleſh you perceive a Swelling to ariſe in the Groin of a Horſe,

Take Shoemaker's Wax, the white ſort, add to an Ounce of it half an Ounce of the Powder of Bithwort-roots, and as much *Amoniacum*, and, over a gentle Fire, make them into a Plaiſter: which being ſpread upon a Leather, apply it to the place till the Swelling is ripe for breaking; then lance it, and take out the Putrefaction; after that waſh the Sorrance with Water wherein Allom and Honey have been diſſolved, till you find it begin to heal; then anoint it with *Unguentum Ægyptiacum*, and bind it up.

For a general Mangineſs, the Remedy.

This happens through the corruption of the Blood, and groſſneſs of Humour, occaſioned by over-labouring, overheating, and bad feeding, or any of theſe; and may be ſometimes catched by Contagion from other Horſes; the ſign is an extraordinary itching, which you may obſerve by his ſcrubbing and the riſing of little Knots within the Skin; which being perceived,

Take

Take Verdigreaſe two Ounces, common Soap a Pound, Oyl of Spike two Ounces, Linſeed-oyl a Pint, Red-wine half a Pint: incorporate them over a gentle Fire, reducing them to the thickneſs of an Oyntment: having firſt let the Horſe blood, anoint him with the Oyntment, after the Scurf and Scabs are likewiſe rubbed off: and ſo continue to do for a Week, or ſo long till you perceive the Diſtemper to ceaſe by the dying of the Scabs, and the coming of good Fleſh.

The Barbs, what they are, and how removed.

This troubleſome Sorrance happens under the Tongue of the Horſe, being compoſed of two long Bags of Fleſh, like Paps of Nipples, growing as they abound with Humour more or leſs, and hinder the Horſe much in his feeding, putting him to no ſmall trouble. Now, to remedy it, clip them off cloſe to the Jaw, and

Take of Allom an Ounce, Honey the like quantity, Bay-ſalt a handful, and the Juyce of Mint a quarter of a Pint: diſſolve and boil theſe in a Quart of fair Water, and waſh the roots of the Barbs till they heal. Some there are that adviſe Burning them off; but, in my opinion, by reaſon of their ſituation, that is neither ſo eaſie to be done, nor ſafe, leſt the Tongue-ſtring or ſmall Veins be thereby rendred uſeleſs, and conſequently the Horſe defective in his feeling.

For Blood-ſhot Eyes, an excellent Remedy.

The Eyes by ſtraining, blow, or ſuper-abundance of corrupt Blood, becoming red and rheumy; ſo that unleſs ſpeedily cured, they may turn to further prejudice, if not to blindneſs. To cure this,

Take the Juyce of a Lemon, the Crumbs of White-bread, Bole-armonick and a rotten Apple: bruiſe them together, and make of them a Cataplaſm or Plaiſter: Then take the Powder of the Roots of Mallows, with that of a Cruſt of brown Bread, and blow into the Eyes, binding over them the Plaiſter, or rather Poultis, and in ſo doing three or four times the Blood and Rheum will be driven back and diſperſed: but if it be ſo great that this cannot conquer it, then bleed your Horſe in the Temple-veins.

For

For any Film, Bite, or Blow in the Eye, a Remedy.

Take Copras, that which is white, a quarter of an Ounce, and the like quantity of Verdigreaſe: beat them to Powder, and dry them well upon a Plate or *Spatula*; and after that take of it to the quantity of half a dram, and blow it into the Eye with a Quill; then cloſe the Horſe's Eye a quarter of an Hour, and after that waſh it with Eye-bright Water; and ſo continue to do till all your Powder is waſted, and then you will perceive a brightneſs in your Horſe's Eye, all Grievances being vaniſhed.

To kill Lice, or remove Flies from offending your Horſe.

Take the Flower of Brimſtone an Ounce, Quick-ſilver well killed, the like quantity; the Oil of Spike two Ounces: mix them with the Whites of two Eggs, and then boil them in two Quarts of ſtrong Urine, and anoint the Horſe therewith, and it will prevent either the annoyance, or cure it when contracted.

To rid a Horſe from any foulneſs or diſorder in the Body.

Take of Grounſel half a handful, red Sage the like quantity, Smallage and Wormwood each a handful: ſhread them ſmall, and boil them well in a Pint and a half of Ale, into which put a quarter of a Pound of freſh Butter, and an Ounce of the Powder of Mechocan, give the liquid part to your Horſe to drink, as warm as poſſible, and feed him with Maſhes for a day afterward.

For an extraordinary Bruiſe or Bite.

Take of *Caliminaris*, quenched in White-wine, two Drams; an Ounce of the Juyce of Houſleek and two Ounces of the Seeds of Mallows, with an Ounce of *Venice* Treacle, make them up into Balls as big as Walnuts, and give them the Horſe in a quarter of a Pint of Salad-oyl; and at the ſame time apply a Plaiſter of Hemlock and Barrows-greaſe well ſtamped and mixed together, and this being done for a Week together, will work ſtrange effects in relation to a cure.

For a Horſe that is troubled with the Strangling, a Cure.

Take of Elder-buds, or the Bark of the Root of that Tree, a good handful; Wormwood, and the Herb Mercury, of each half a handful, and as much wild Tanſey:

boil

boil them well in two Quarts of Vinegar, and give them the Horſe, that is, the liquid part as hot as may be faſting.

To remedy the Swelling of a Horſe upon having eaten any infectious thing in his Graſs or Provender that may, if not remedied, prove dangerous.

This Grievance is known by the ſlavering of the Beaſt, the ſtaring of the Eyes, and the riſing of the Belly, the beating of the Flanks, and a cold Sweat: which perceived,

Take of the Juyce of Rue one Pint, two Quarts of Milk, and a Pint of Olive-oil: boil them together till a third part be conſumed; and then ſweetning it with brown Sugar, give it the Horſe.

For a Heart-burning or Waſting occaſioned thereby.

Take the Juyce of Wood-ſorrel or Field-ſorrel a Pint, Allom-powder two Ounces, Harts-horn an Ounce, the Seeds of Pomegranates two Ounces, and Spring-water a Quart: boil them well together, and ſtrain out the liquid part; give it the Horſe as hot as may be.

To prevent Staling Blood, a Remedy.

Take of Ale a Quart, the Roes of two red Herrings, and three or four Cloves of Garlick: boil them together, and give them the Horſe Morning and Evening, that is, the liquid part.

Another exellent Remedy for the Farcy, vulgarly called the Faſhon.

Take Rue, Garlick and Cloves, of each half a handful: bruiſe them well, and boil them in half a Pint of *Aqua vitæ*; then dip Wool or Lint into the liquid part, and ſtop it into the Horſe's Ears, binding it in: after that bruiſe the Bark of the Elder, and making an Inciſion in the Forehead, raiſe the Skin with your Pegging-horn, and ſtop it under the Skin, being firſt dipped in Oyl of Roſemary; then give the Horſe a Doſe of the Juyce of Liverwort, mixed with half a Pint of Canary, and after that warm Maſhes.

An approved Cure for any Sinew-ſtrain or Over-reach.

Take Oyl of Bays an Ounce, Linſeed-oyl two Ounces; put them into half a Pint of *Aqua vitæ*, and being well in-

incorporated, add Wine-vinegar half a pint, and boil them to the consumption of a third part; then with your hand chafe it in, or with a warm cloth swathing it afterward to the best advantage, and in so doing you will soon find the effects.

Diseases in the Hoof how to remedy; and first for a Horse, that upon sundry occasions is apt to cast his Hoof.

The cause of the Hoofs falling off is various, for sometimes it proceeds from Gravel, another time from the pricking of a Nail; and in these cases it cleaves downward as the Humour settles; but if it happen by any Grievance on the top of the Hoof, as the Quitter-bone, and the like, then must you look to the top of the Hoof; and when you there perceive it begin to divide from the flesh, or to open at any part, then take off the Shooe, open the Hoof, and pare it as near as may be to the Sole; after which steep the Foot in Neats-foot-oyl, and the Juyce of Hemlock, in which Allom has been dissolved, then make an Oyntment after this manner:

Take of Virgins-Wax two ounces, of Verdegrease an ounce, of Per-rosin three ounces, and Hog's Lard a quarter of a pound; to these add the Juyce of green Tobacco a quarter of a pint; make them into an Oyntment, and pour it into the divided place; which done, bind it up close with a thick Linnen-cloth; and in so often doing, the flesh will be obliged to cleave to the Hoof, and render it firm, unless it be too far gone before you attempt it.

Hoof-bound; what it is, and how to remedy it.

This Grievance proceeds from some defect in the Hoof, or harm taken in the Colts-age, whilst it was tender, or by the falling down of a Humour, and the Symptoms are, the Flesh growing over it more than usual, the straitness or narrowness in disproportion to the Leg, and the sound of hollowness being struck with a Hammer or other material Instrument, which being well understood,

Take Hog's Lard a pound, Soap the like quantity, the Juyce of Baulm a pound, Bay-leaves a handful, the Juyce of Rue a quarter of a pint; incorporate or concoct them over a gentle fire, and steep the Hoof in the Liquid part, for the space of an hour every morning; then dip a cloth in the Oil of *Petrolum*, and bind it about it. To

To soften or harden the Hoof, the best way.

This Experiment is fitting to be known by all Farriers, not only for the advantage of Shooing, but for the Travel, more or less, of the Horse. Wherefore in the first place, if you perceive the Hoof to be hard and brittle, standing out, uncomely, then tye it with a Butress, and if you find it brittle, and not plyable to be pared or cut; then

Take of Lime unslaked an ounce, common Soap the like quantity; dissolve these into a Lye made of Ashwood-ashes, and having prepared a Cataplasm or Poultis of Groundsel, Marshmallows, Smallage, Succory and Sallendine fryed in Neatsfoot-oyl; after the Horse's Hoofs has been steeped in the Lye for the space of an hour, as warm as may well be endured; clap the Poultis to them, and stop the bottom of his Foot well with Flax dipped in Tar.

To harden a Hoof as occasion requires.

If by going in moist Ground, or moist Feeding, the Hoof happen to be softned, so that it will not well bear a Shooe, or be prejudicial in Travelling; then to render it capable for either,

Take the Coles of burnt Leather a pound, the Water wherein Lime has been slaked, and hot Flint-stones quenched, two quarts; add to them a quart of Lime-juyce, and a pound of Bay-salt, and in the liquid part either let the Horse stand, or with it bathe his Hoofs; after which, Take Oil of Tartar, or that of Brimestone, and anoint them, binding a cloth over them, and suffer the Horse to stand dry: and by thus often doing, you will, by experience, find your expectation answered.

For any hurt or cankerous Sore in or on the Hoof.

Take, if the season permit, a pound of Black-snails; if not, other Snails of any kind may serve the purpose; of Burdock-roots sliced the like quantity; Oil of Camomil four ounces, and Olive-oil a quart; boil them together till they are pliable to be laid Plaster-wise to the place grieved; to which, after you have washed the Sorrance with water wherein there has been Elder boiled, applying them, and supplying those first laid with fresh every day, till you find the effects.

To

To oblige a Horſe to carry his Ears well, the way.

This defect happens either for want of a true proportion, or by a defect of the Nerves which refuſe to adminiſter ſo great a ſupply of ſtrength as may ſupport the Ears as they ought to ſtand for the ſake of Ornament. Now to ſtrengthen the Nerves or Sinews to that degree,

Take of Bear's fat an ounce, Comfory-juyce the like quantity, Oil of Amber a dram, the Root of Black-hellebore, beaten into powder, an ounce, and with Bees-wax half an ounce, and the Oil of Roſes half a pint; make theſe into an Oyntment, and anoint the roots of the Horſe's Ears as hot as may be well endured, repeating it for a week together.

For the Grievance called the Frounce, *a Cure.*

This Sorrance is alſo called by ſome a *Cameroy*, and is no other then ſmall Knobs or Bladders on the roof of the Mouth, or upon the Tongue; and the cauſe, for the moſt part, is the Horſe's feeding in wet or low Marſhes in froſty weather, or by eating unſavory Hay in which Vermine have piſſed or dunged; and further, ſome hold it to proceed from the Horſe's licking up unſavory things tending to a venemous quality. To remedy which,

Take Vinegar and Bay-ſalt, with the Juyce of Sage, and with them, after having let the Horſe bloud in the Veins under the tongue, rub the place grieved till the Knobs or Pimples bleed; and by often ſo doing they will diſappear.

For a Heat, which ſometimes occaſions a breaking out in the Mouth and Lips, the Cure.

This Diſorder is accompanied with dryneſs, and proceeds from the heat of the ſtomach, by ſurfeits, over-heating, or a conſuming quality; and if not timely taken notice of, produces the infectious humour that creates the Canker: To redreſs which, Bleed the Veins in the Lips, which you may cauſe to appear by bending them the contrary way; and then waſh them with Salt and Vinegar, giving the Horſe water to drink wherein Colt's foot has been boiled, or Fenegreek-ſeed, with his Provender.

Wolf-teeth what they are, and how to eaſe their Pains the ready way.

Theſe Teeth are too commonly growing in the upper Jaw next the Grinders, which many times occaſion ſuch pain that the

the Horſe is fruſtrated in his eating, by being obliged to let his Provender fall out of his mouth; and the cauſe they are moſtly ſubject to this is, by reaſon they have frequently a hollowneſs within ſubject to receive the Rheums that ſettle in the Jaw; to remedy which, either draw them, or launcing the Gums that they may bleed; waſh the Mouth each morning with Hyſop-water and Allom, the latter being diſſolved in the former.

To ſtanch any Bleeding, a ſpeedy way.

If by occaſion of Wound or Sorrance your Horſe happen to bleed exceſſively, ſo that thereby, if not timely ſtopped, he may be weakened, or other ways endangered,

Take the Wool of a Hare or Coney, dip it in Vinegar, and then ſtrew upon it the Powder of Calcined Egg-ſhells, and apply it to the place; or you may for want of the former dip it in Nettle-juyce and Bay-ſalt, or apply to the Wound or Sorrance a Poultis of Hemlock and the Bark of Elder-root.

To ſupply the defect of the falling of the Creſt, a Remedy.

This Uncomelineſs in a Horſe is the leaning of the upper part of the Neck, on which the Mane grows, to one or the other ſide, which is cauſed by weakneſs of the Sinews or Nerves, through a contraction of cold, or ſome flegmatick humour there engendred; or, on the other hand, upon the riſing of the fleſh through extraordinary fatneſs. To remedy which,

Take the Oil of *Petrolum* two ounces, Linſeed-oil half a pint; and having well-waſhed the Creſt with Water wherein the Roots of Mallows have been boiled, and Allom diſſolved, anoint it with the Oil; and in ſo continuing to do for a month, the Skin will contract; and more eſpecially, if upon every Application you clap two broad pieces of deal or other board, on each ſide; and ſo bind it up in due order, and let the Horſe bloud in the contrary Neck-vein.

To Cure Mangineſs, or the like Diſorder, in the Creſt.

Take Hog's lard a pound, Verdegreaſe four ounces, Flower of Brimſtone four ounces; add to theſe a pint of Beef-broth very ſalt, and diſſolve what is to be diſſolved therein. Then having rubbed off the Scabs and Scurf till they bleed, waſh the place grieved therewith as hot as may be well endu-

dured, for a week together; and lay after that a cloth dipped in green Ointment thereon. This will also hinder the Hair from falling off, especially the former.

The Navel-Gall; what it is, and its Remedy.

This Grievance is no other than a bruise or hurt with an unfit or uneasie Saddle, on that part of the Back that is oppoine to the Navel, and for that cause only is so called; it is known by a soft swelling in the place bruised, and its Cure is as followeth:

Take the Whites of two Eggs, an ounce of Copras, two ounces of the Oil of Bays, and of Marshmallows, Smallage, Groundsel and Camomil, each a handful; stamp them in a Mortar, and pour the Liquids to them, by which means make them into a Poultis, and frying them, lay them as hot as may be to the place grieved.

For a Sitfast, or horney Excressence under the Saddle, whereby the Horse is disabled from carrying it in good order as he ought.

This Sorrance appears like a piece of old Leather upon the Horse's Back, and is commonly the relick of some old bruise or desperate Saddle-gall not well cured, and obligeth the Skin to stick fast to the flesh. To cure which,

Take Oil of Vitriol, and anoint the place till it has loosned the excressence: after which take it off by incision, and anoint the place with Verdigrease and Hog's Lard hot, and wash it after with the Juyce of Mint, till it be new skinned; and to make the Hair come, wash it with the Juyce of *Cardus Benedictus*, or that of Hemlock.

For any Knob or Wen near the Saddle-skirt, or the Sides of the Horse, a Remedy.

To remove this, Wash it first with hot Wine-lees, and afterward bathe it with Oil of Camomil, or Marshmallows; then to draw it to a head, lay on a Plaister of Stone-pitch and Turpentine; which being done, launce it with your sharp-pointed Fleam, and apply a Plaister of *Oxecrotium* to draw out the Putrefaction, and then with Hog's Lard supple it; and if the Sore be deep, Tent it with a Linnen Tent, dipped in Bees-wax and Honey melted together.

For Weakness in the Back, a strengthning Remedy.

This happens frequently through Coldness or Watry Humours

mours afflicting the Sinews, or in gelly'd Water ſetling in the Joynts, or by his too often covering the Mares, or ſuch like. Now to corroborate a Horſe defective herein,

Take Horſe-radiſh-roots a pound, Bay-leaves two handfuls, the Bark of Elder the like quantity; boil them in Man's Urine, and with the liquid part bathe the Back as hot as is convenient, giving him for diet Oats and Splent-beans, and each morning, faſting, a Ball made in this manner:

Take Diorifh-powder two ounces, Hart's Horn beaten to Powder an ounce, Fenegreek and Hyſop-ſeed ſtamped, of each two ounces; wet them with as much Mallago-wine as will make them up into Balls about the bigneſs of Pigeons Eggs.

For the Swelling in the Cods of a Horſe naturally, or occaſioned by any Bruiſe, &c.

Take Dill-ſeeds or Fennel-ſeeds an ounce, the Juyce of Orpin a quarter of a pint, Bole-armorick two ounces, the Juyce of Garlick the like quantity; make theſe with Hog's Lard, into an Ointment, and anoint the place grieved as warm as may be well endured.

For Burſtenneſs, or the Rupture in a Horſe.

This Grievance is the breaking of the Rim or Film that holds up the Bowels from falling into the Cods, and either happens by overſtaining in riding upon a full Belly, or the Horſe's leaping beyond his ſtrength, and is by moſt Farriers held Incurable. But ſince it ſo happens that a Burſten Horſe may, notwithſtanding, in ſome meaſure be fit for ſervice, I ſhall give ſuch Directions as may the better enable him for it:

Take your Horſe to whom this misfortune has befallen, and faſten Ropes, with running Nooſes, to his Feet; then putting Ropes through them, caſt him upon ſoft Straw, and draw him up by caſting the Ropes over a Beam in the Barn or Stable; then with your hands gently ſeparate the Bowels from the Stones, putting the former in their proper place, and retaining the latter; withal, anointing the Cods with Hog's Lard and the Juyce of Endive, gently chafing them till they begin to ſhrink up; then with a ſoft Liſt tye the Cod as near to the Belly as may be, and cut out the

Ston-

Stone were the Film is broken, ſewing up the Cod with thread dipped in the Oil of Turpentine; and ſo keep your Horſe for the ſpace of a fortnight in a warm Stable, with hearning Diet, anointing his Cods with Hog's Lard and Allom-powder, melted together over a gentle Fire.

The Art of diſcovering hidden Griefs, or Ailments in a Horſe, and from what they proceed.

The better to be the leaſt couzened in Horſe-fleſh, is to ſee one lead him before you in a ſtring to ſeveral paces; and though you cannot ſo know his Grief or Ailment, yet if you well obſerve how he takes up his Legs, the defect will appear by his favouring one more than the other; but if nothing of that appear, then back him and ride him at all paces, ſo that you or your Friend, who ſtands by, may be convinced by his going, how he ſtands affected. Now if ſo it happen he ſets out ſtiff, and handles his Legs confuſedly, then does his Grief proceed from cold ſettlements of watry Humours in or near the Joynt; for which, chafe his Legs morning and evening with *Aqua vitæ* and Oil of Turpentine; but if it proceed from Heat, as Surfeits, and the like, then he will halt the more he is ridden or chafed, by being heated, and then anoint his Limbs with Neats-foot-oil, the Marrow of a Swine, or waſh them with Water, wherein Copras has been diſſolved, and look he be kept in a clean warm Stable.

The Bone-ſpavin, what it is, &c.

This Excreſſence or Sorrance is a Knob of bony ſubſtance growing under the Joynt, on the ſide of the Hoof, as big ſometimes as a Pullets Egg, and either proceeds from the too early preſſing the little Bones in thoſe parts, by hard Labour, or from the ſettlement of bad Humours, fed by the Maſter-vein that deſcends to thoſe parts. This many times is ſo troubleſome to a Horſe, that it makes him go down lame. Now the beſt way to remove and cure this Sorrance is this:

Take a Pen-knife and lay open the Skin about the bony Excreſſence; and having a Chiſel or Knife for that purpoſe, ſtrike off, or pare away the Bone till you come as near as may be to the quick; then having ready a Plaiſter of Bees-wax and Verdigreaſe well mixed by melting, bind

bind it on, but ſo that it may not afflict the Vein, and renew it every other day, for the ſpace of a week; then with Hog's Lard cleanſe and anoint it for two or thee days more, and finally, waſh it with Vinegar, and bind it up that it may heal. For want of Verdigreaſe, you may take the Powder of burnt Allom.

For a Haw in the Eye.

This happens moſt commonly by a blow, or over-riding, and greatly impairs the ſight: To remove which,

Take burnt Allom, and the Powder of Juniper-berries, and blow them into the Eye, keeping it cloſe for a quarter of an hour; and ſo by often doing you will perceive the Haw looſned by its wrinkling up, then with your Nails take hold of it, and draw it forth, or if you cannot ſo do, continue the Powder till it is eaten off.

For the falling out of the Fundament, a Remedy.

The falling out of the Fundament often happens by an extraordinary Laxativeneſs, or a Coldneſs contracted in the Bowels, which creates a ſlimy matter; and in this caſe anoint it with Oil of Spike, and ſprinkling on it the Powder of Turmerick, put it up in order, and binding a ſtring about the Tail, bring the ſtring between the Legs, and by faſtning it to a ſtrap croſs the Shoulders, keep in the Fundament, ſuffering the Tail to continue ſo faſtned for the ſpace of twelve hours; and this method may be uſed in caſe of the Womb of a Mare's falling out, *&c.*

To preſerve a Hoof from decaying, &c.

Take half a pound of Tar, a quart of Vinegar, half a pound of Hog's Greaſe, a quarter of a pint of the Juyce of Garlick, two ounces of *Olibanum*, and as much Bees-wax; boil them together till the moiſture be ſo far conſumed, that it becomes the thickneſs of an ointment, and with it at ſeaſonable times anoint the Hoof, and dipping Flax into it, ſtop the hollow part, if you find any defect there, or ſuſpect any will happen.

Interfering, what it is, and the Remedy.

This happens when by the unevenneſs of a Horſe's ſteps, or the bad ſhooing, he cuts his fore Fetlock joynt on the inſide with his hinder ſhooe; which by its not being well looked to, many times feſters and becomes a ſore Scab: To cure which,

Take

Take fresh Butter half a Pound, Rosin the like quantity, Nerve-oyl half a Pint; melt them together, and when they are of a thickness, spread a Plaister, and lay it to the place grieved, supplying it before with Hogs-grease, or the Oyl of Camomil.

A false Quarter, what it is.

This is a defect in the Hoof, in such a manner, as if a piece was put in, having on either side it a Seam or Rift, which frequently obliges the Horse to halt on that part, and is generally caused by some prick or hurt when a Colt. To remedy which, at least to give the Horse ease,

Take off the Shooe, and pare the Hoof, on that side as much as may be, and then supply the defect with Toe, dipped in melted Turpentine and Bees-wax, not over-travelling, or using your Horse to dirty ways.

The Melt on the Heel.

This is no other than a dry Scab growing on the Heel, occasioned sometimes by the Horse's standing wet and dry over long or unseasonably; and at other times, through corrupt Blood setling there: To remedy which,

Take of black Soap a quarter of a Pound, Honey the like quantity; dissolve them in a Pint of Vinegar, then add the Powder of burnt Allom two Ounces, and Rye-meal a like quantity; wash the Sorrance well with Water and Salt, and then spread the before-mentioned Materials, and apply them Plaister-wise, having first taken off the Scurf or Scab as clean as may be; and so for a Week together continue the Supplement.

An excellent Remedy for any Strain or Swelling.

Take of *Aqua vitæ* a Pint, melt into it a quarter of a Pound of fresh Butter, and mix with them a quarter of a Pint of the Juyce of Hellebore: then, with the Liquids, make a Plaister of Rye-meal and apply it as hot as may well be endured to the place grieved: This will likewise asswage any Swelling, or the like disorder.

How to remedy the harm done a Horse by unadvisedly and unskilfully letting Blood.

Many times a Horse being let Blood by an unskilful hand, or suffered thereupon to take cold, or the Wind to possess the empty Veins which causes Swellings in the Neck, or other disorders. To remedy it, Take

Take Sheeps-ſuet half a Pound; the Juyce of Hemlock half a Pint, and four Ounces of the Oyl of Camomil: which being made into an Oyntment rub and chafe his Neck with them as hot as may be, Morning and Evening, giving him warm Water to drink wherein Fennel-ſeeds are ſcattered, and cover his Neck over with a warm Cloth, giving him gentle heats.

For the Leproſie in Horſes, a Remedy, with the Cauſe.

Take Reſalgar, otherwiſe called Arſnick, and Hogs-lard well tryed: incorporate them to an Oyntment over a gentle Fire; and having drawn the Horſe's Head up ſtrait to the Rack, to prevent his diſorders, anoint the place with a Feather, and ſuffer it for the ſpace of two hours to ſoak in; and after that boil the Roots of Burdocks in Chamber-lye, and waſh with it the Oyntment clean away: which done, give the Horſe Meat of the beſt to hearten and encourage him to endurance; and ſo proceed to do every other day for ſix days ſucceſſively.

This Grievance, or dangerous Malady, befals a Horſe by extraordinary riding, and ſuffering the Horſe to cool, and conſequently ſurfeit: or from the rankneſs of Blood, which produces evil humours, and they not timely let out, force their way in Botches and dry Sorrances, which upon dreſſing muſt be rubbed off, to prepare the way for the Oyntment.

For any Diſeaſe in the Lungs, an excellent Remedy.

The Diſeaſes in the Lungs proceed frequently from extraordinary cold and flegmatick Humours, or, on the contrary, from hot Inflammations, cauſed by Surfeits, or the like; either of which, if not timely remedied, tend to conſumption and rottenneſs, and are known by the working of the Ribs, and beating of the Flanks; but more eſpecially by his coughing weakly, and the ſlow beating of what has been before mentioned, with other the like ſigns.

To cure theſe, Take of the Herb of Melilot, commonly called Horſe-Lung-wort; bruiſe it in a Mortar, and ſqueeze out the Juyce to the quantity of two Ounces; of Fenugreek-ſeeds and Madder, each an Ounce, with as much of Roſemary-ſeed, and give him them, the latter being

being well bruiſed in a Quart of warm Ale, every other day, for the ſpace of fourteen days, faſting; and, after the Doſe, let him have Oats waſhed in warm Beer, and warm Maſhes, keeping him in a cloſe Stable, without exerciſing him, unleſs in a fair clear day: Or for want of theſe,

Take a young Snake, open it, and put into the Belly Rue and Snakeweed; ſhread, with the Fat of a Hedge-hog, as much as the Belly of the Snake, being embowelled, will hold; and let it be roaſted before a gentle Fire, ſaving the Oyl or Dripping that falls from it carefully in an Earthen-pan; and having ſhaved off the Hair on the Breaſt, anoint it with this Oyntment, chafing it in with your hot hand; and ſo do by renewing the Oyntment as often as you ſee it convenient.

For the Swelling of the Horſe's Legs, the Cure.

The cauſe of the Swelling in the Legs comes through cold Humours ſetling therein, or over-much riding in foul or dirty Ways, over-heats or over-ſtrains, or by Molten Greaſe falling down into the Legs; and in this caſe, having let Blood in the moſt convenient Veins, as near as may be to the Swelling, to take away the corrupt Blood, then

Take the Lees of White-wine or Rheniſh-wine half a Pint, Camomil half a handful, Cummin-ſeeds an Ounce, Wheat-flower two handfuls; boil them all together, adding in the boiling half a Pint of Verjuyce, and ſo lay them hot as a Poultis to the place grieved, renewing it till you find it draws the Swelling to a head: which being done,

Take Shoomakers Wax an Ounce, the like quantity of Virgin's Wax; half an Ounce of Bole-armoniack, and half a Pint of Olive-oyl; the Yolks of two Eggs, and half a Quartern of Honey: beat theſe well together over a gentle Fire, till you perceive them well incorporated into the thickneſs of a Salve; and then, ſpreading part of it upon Sheeps-leather, apply it Plaiſterwiſe till the Corruption, by often renewing it, be drawn away: then waſh the place with Balm-water, and heal it up with Hogs-greaſe and Honey, incorporated over a gentle Fire.

The flying Worm, what it is, and how to Cure it.

This is known generally by the name of a Tetter or Ring-

Ring-worm, occaſioned by an extraordinary heat in the Blood, and other foul Diſorders, creating a virilent or ſharp fiery Humour, and for the moſt part ſeizes upon the Rump or Crupper of the Horſe, and frequently by not being regarded, turns to a Canker; though indeed it will ſeize and ſo is found to do upon any part of the Body that is ſubject to fleſhyneſs or abundance of Blood, and cauſe the Horſe to rub himſelf in an extraordinary manner: and is known by the falling away of the hair, and the Horſe's continual rubbing.

To cure this, Let the Horſe blood as ſoon as may be i that part where it has ſeized him; and then

Take an Ounce of Verdigreaſe, two Ounces of Bu dock-juyce, two Ounces of Soot, a quarter of an Ounc of the Oyl of Tartar: and with the weight of all thes in Hog's Lard, make them up into an Oyntment, b thing it with it as hot as may be endured: and ſo conti nue to do till the Malady ceaſes to ſpread, and conſequen ly dies.

Excellent Directions for the preventing of Diſeaſes in Horſes, ſundry times, &c.

Obſerve in this caſe to bleed your Horſe the beginni of *April* in the Neck-veins, when the Sign of Life is not that part; and ſo, every day in the Month of *April*, g him what I order: As thus,

Take old Ryé, not muſty, nor any ways diſordered, i paired by ſhriv'ling up, nor any way foul with Dirt, Lom ſtones, or the like, take to the quantity of a Buſhel; a having ſprinkled it with the Juyce of Baum, and again d ed it by ſpreading in the Sun; put it into an Iron Boili pot without Water, and there, by perpetual ſtirring, par it to that degree that it becomes black and hard: then ta it out, and put it into a cloſe dry place, and each day g your Horſe a Quart of it, beaten to Powder, amongſt Oats: and ſo do in the Month of *October*, likewiſe reme bring to let him blood: And by this means his Blood be ſo well tempered, that unleſs ſome extraordinary m ter happen, as exceeding heats occaſioning ſurfeits, rank feeding, or damp lying, the Horſe will undoubt

be kept in a good temper of body during the whole year: And the better to confirm him, give him this drink as ſoon as he is let bloud, *viz.*

Take of White-wine a pint, infuſe into it Cinamon, Cloves and Saffron, of each three drams, Caſſa and Myrrh, of each the like quantity; let them ſimper over a gentle fire for the ſpace of an hour, and then being ſweetned with Sugarcandy or fine Sugar, give it him blood-warm faſting, and keep him warm with a cloth for the ſpace of two hours after without Meat.

A Cure for a ſore or defective Mouth.

The Sores or Diſorders in the Mouth are occaſioned either by bad Blood or exceſſive Colds, creating Rheums and noiſome Vapours that afflict the Pallate, for there they generally begin; and from thence deſcending to the Jaws, do in a great meaſure obſtruct the feeding, and hinder the ſhutting of the Mouth: Now when it happens in the Pallate only, the beſt expedient is to let Bloud in the Mouth, by cutting the third Barr, or as your diſcretion leads you.

The Horſe being let Bloud, Take of ſtrong old Cheeſe ſix ounces, and a Root of Garlick; bruiſe them well, and boil, them in water wherein Plantane has been concocted, and with the liquid part waſh the Mouth and Tongue of the Horſe, as hot as it may well be endured; ſo continuing often to do, till you find the Grievances to decreaſe; and if it be ſo far gone, that this proves not effectual,

Take a pint of Verjuyce, a handful of Bay-ſalt, a quarter of a pint of the Juyce of Houſleek, and a pennyworth of *Diaſcordium*; boil them well, and having waſhed his Mouth with Savin-water, or Water wherein Savin has been concocted, give him the before-mentioned Potion to drink luke-warm.

For the Meller in the Heels, a Cure.

Take three ounces of Caſtle-ſoap, a pound of Engliſh Honey, Allom two ounces, and of Lime-juyce or Verjuyce a quarter of a pint, with half a handful of Bean-flower; incorporate them over a gentle fire, and having reduced them to a convenient thickneſs, bind a part of it with Leather or thick Linnen upon the place grieved, ſuffering it, without

renewal, to continue there for the ſpace of five days; and between each renewal waſh the place well with Beef-broth, keeping his Leg moiſt and roped, for ſome days after.

The Stavers, their Signs, Cauſe and Cure.

This Diſtemper is known by a dizzineſs in the head, a dulneſs in the eyes, and diſorderly hanging of the jaws, and proceeds in chief from corrupt bloud and infectious vapours that infect the brain, and conſequently put the whole frame out of order. And this Diſeaſe but few Horſes altogether eſcape.

The cure is, to let him bloud in the temple-veins or neck-veins; and having a potion made after this manner, give it him hot, *viz.*

Take a handful of Savin, the like quantity of Rue, an ounce of Ruburb, and an ounce of Mithridate; give him theſe Ingredients, the liquid part well boiled in a quart of Spring-water, ſweetned with brown Sugar or Moloſſus.

For the Stone, a very good Remedy.

This Diſtemper is occaſioned by groſs humours, which ſettling in the reins or bladder, do, in proceſs of time, by the help of heat and moiſture, grow to a hardneſs, and ſo obſtruct the paſſage of the Urine; and by grating thoſe tender parts cauſe exceeding pain and diſorder to the Creature ſo afflicted. To diſſolve or remove the Stone ſo contracted,

Take the roots of Nettles, Parſley, Fennel and Sperage, of each four ounces, of Saxafrage and Dodder, each a handful; bruiſe and boil them in a quart of White-wine, and a pint of Vinegar, until a third part be waſted; then add a handful of Bay-ſalt, and half a pint of Olive-oil, with half a pound of Honey; and having ſtrained out the thin part as hot as may be, let him drink it faſting: and ſo continue to do for the ſpace of a week together, and you will find the pains will ceaſe.

To take away a Wen in the Neck, or any part of the Horſe's Body, without danger.

Theſe Sorrances are generally cauſed by the aſſembling of bad humours to one place, and there contracting into a Tumour. To remove them therefore,

Take

Take the Oil of Bays, Water of Tartar, and Soap-boiler's Lees, mix them well; and being very hot, dip a cloth therein, and lay it upon the place grieved, continuing often so to do; and the humours thereby being dispersed the swelling will sink and disappear.

The Crownet-scab, what it is, together with the Cure.

This is a troublesome Sorrance, being a Scab round the corners of the hoof, very cankerous and dangerous, and frequently comes by a Horse's running in wet and miery ground, especially in Winter-time, whereby the cold has power to contract the gross and disordered humours; and is known by the hairs standing up, the unevenness of the crownet and the watry humour that proceeds from thence: Wherefore to cure it,

Take Verdegrease an ounce, Rusty-bacon-fat two ounces, Powder of Hart's horn an ounce; wash the place with Beef-broth; and having made the before-mentioned Materials into an Ointment, anoint the place as hot as may be endured; and continue so to do for a week together: after which anoint it with Oyl of Bays or Rosemary.

To draw out a Thorn or Stump, or any Iron or sharp thing gotten into the Flesh.

If you cannot come at the cause of this kind of Sorrance, so as to draw it out with your fingers or Pincers, then mollifie the swelling or part where you conceive it to be; and,

Take of Burgundy-pitch an ounce, and of Black-soap two ounces; stamp the Roots of Water-lillies to the quantity of both the former; and spreading them Plaster-wise, lay them to the place a night and a day, and thereby the swelling will not only be sunk or depressed, but the head of the Thorn or Iron will appear to that degree, that it may easily be taken out: after which apply a Plaster of *Diaculum* or *Oxecroteum* to bring away the festered matter, if any be found there, and so heal it with Green-ointment.

For a Strain in the Coffin-joynt, or Socket of the Hoof.

This Sorrance happens by a sudden short slip, and is not thought of by many Farriers, who are of the opinion, That under the hoof there can be no slip or strain, though the contrary appears: and this is found out by taking up the

MI - 1994

foot, and bowing the hoof from side to side; and on that side you perceive the Horse to be pained in so doing, on that side is the danger. This being perceived,

Take of Beef-brine a pint, and as much tried Suet; set them on the fire, and let them consume to a third part; then add Wheat-meal and the Juyce of Ale-hoof or Groundivy half a pound, or so much that they may be made up into the thickness of a Poultis; when having pared the hoof at the bottom to the quick, spread some of it very hot, and stop it in with flax: and so renew it every other day, till you perceive by your Horse's going the Grief removed; and the better to keep it on, you may clap a cross stick under the shooe, or cover the whole foot with a pitched cloth, or a thick sole of leather will do the same office; but observe that during the cure, you suffer him not to go in wet and dirty ground.

For a Horse that is perpetually sick or out of order, by retaining a spice of former surfeits.

Having let your Horse bloud take him up into a warm Stable, and prepare two ounces of Alloes Sucatrina, finely beaten to powder; rowl them up in Butter that has been tempered with the Juyce of Rue, and give him the composition in pellets as big as Walnuts, in the morning fasting, having prepared his body for the reception thereof, by dieting him some days before with scalded bran and boiled barley, refusing on this occasion to give him hard meats till three days after, suffering his drink to be white-water, and that very warm. Now this white-water is no other than water wherein flower or bran is scattered, or bread finely grated and sifted, *&c.*

For a Cold in the Summer when the Horse is defective in filling, or by too rank feeding.

Take of the Powder of the Root of Scabeous an ounce and a half, of Red-stone-sugar half a pound, and of Olive-oyl four ounces; add to these half a pint of Canary, or as much as will dissolve them to a thinness, that the Horse may easily swallow them; and so give them to him luke-warm in a drenching-horn; and after them a gentle heat, in such manner, that the humours may be stirred and brought away by excrement of sweat, urine, *&c.* And this may be given in case

eaſe of any extraordinary over-heating, by racing, and the like.

A Through-ſplint or Screw-pin, what it is, together with the Cure.

This Sorrance happens on both ſides of the legs ſo oppoſite one to the other, as if it riveted it; and from thence takes the denomination of Screw-pin, and is a kind of a ſinewy excreſſence: Wherefore to remove it, for it is very troubleſame to the Horſe,

Take the handle of a hammer, or the bloud-ſtick, and beat it therewith on either ſide, till you have reduced it to a ſoftneſs; then having an ounce of the Oyl of *Riggrum*, or by ſome called *Reggium*, anoint it therewith, and bind a cloth about it, and by frequent dreſſing the Excreſſence will ſink, and reſtore the Leg to a flatneſs; for want of the before-mentioned Oyl, take that of *Petrolum*, and it will work much the like effects.

To render a brittle Hoof firm and ſerviceable.

Take the Juyce of Garlick and Rue, or Herb-a-grace of each four ounces, Powder of burnt Roach-allom, half a pound, Hog's greaſe and new Cow-dung, of each a pound; mix them together, and being made into a Poultis over a gentle fire, apply it hot to the Hoof, binding it about it, and ſtuffing it in under the Shooe; and in often renewing it, the Cure will be perfected.

To Cure the Anbury.

Sear it off with a ſharp hot Iron, and having Hog's greaſe and Verdigreaſe well tempered together, anoint the Roots therewith at ſundry times, *&c.*

To prevent a Horſe's piſſing Blood, an excellent Remedy.

Take the Herb called Harts-tongue half a handful, Piony-roots ſliced an ounce, the Juyce of Bettony half a pint; boil them in ſtale Beer, and give them him as hot as he is capable to endure, the liquid part only; and ſo continue to do in the morning faſting for a week together, and the defect will ceaſe.

For a broken Knee, the Remedy.

Take Urine, heat it well, and waſh the Sorrance, eaſing it of the Gravel if any be contracted, by falling or the like; then take Turpentine an ounce, Roſin the like quantity,

Hog's Lard two ounces, and the Blades of Leeks a handful, with two ounces of the Powder of burnt Allom; bruise the Leeks, press out the Juyce, and melt it with the rest, to the thickness of a Salve; and spreading it Plaister-wise, apply it to the place grieved, anointing it between whiles with Oil of Coriander-seed or Anniseeds.

For the Dropsie in a Horse.

This Distemper proceeds from the looseness of the flesh, occasioned by moist and unwholesome feeding, whereby flegmatick and watry Humours are ingendred in the Bloud, which sweating as it were through the Veins, are retained between the skin and the flesh, or in the spongy flesh, occasioning Tumours and unseemly Swellings. To remove which,

Take two handfuls of Parsley-seeds, the like of Anniseeds and Bay-berries, with one handful of Juniper-berries; bruise them together in a Mortar, and boiling them in Verjuyce, sweetned with brown Sugar; give the Horse to the quantity of a pint to drink, first and last chafing the swelled or tumourous places with your Hand, or hard wisp of Hay; and so continuing them for a week together, you will find the flesh become firm, and the watry Humours disperse.

To joyn a Sinew that is cut.

Cleanse the Wound with the Juyce of Nettles and white Sugar; then take the Ointment of Tobacco, and a Plaister of *Diaculum*; apply them and bind up the Wound very strait.

For a Wound or Hurt in the Tongue, a Remedy.

This Sorrance being occasioned by the Halter or Bitt, in having to do with too hard a hand. To cure it, Take of the Juyce of Sallendine half a pint, as much of that of Bugloss; heat them over a gentle fire, adding two ounces of Honey of Roses, and as much Allom; and with them anoint the grieved place, and you will find it quickly heal.

For the Itch in the Tail, or any other part.

This Disorder proceeds from rank Bloud, through foul feeding; therefore having bled your Horse well,

Take Wood-ashes a peck, Burdock-roots a handful or two, Man's Urine two gallons, and the like quantity of Water wherein Tobacco-stalks have been steeped; boil them up

up into a Lye, and with it wash the grieved part when it is very hot.

Another excellent Remedy for a Tetter.

Take of the Roots of Elicampane and red Dock, of each a handful; steep them a week in Urine, adding two handfuls of Bay-salt; boil them in the Urine, till from two quarts it become one, and with it wash the Sorrance, after it has been well rubbed and chafed, that the liquids may the better sink in.

For a Hurt or Wring in the Withers.

This commonly happens by the straitness of the Saddle, or indiscretion of the Rider, and is known by a Swelling or Tumour on the Back, *&c.* To remedy this,

Take a handful of Wheat-flower, wet it with half a pint of White-wine Vinegar, adding three ounces of Honey, and an ounce of the Juyce of Hemlock; mix them well over a gentle fire, and apply them Plaister-wise to the place grieved: or for want of these,

Take Water wherein Barley and Fennel have been boiled, and wash the places with it as warm as may well be endured.

Worms of any sort in the Body of a Horse, how to kill and remove them.

Take a handful of the tops of Broom, and of Savin the like quantity; bruise them together with as much Featherfew, then with fresh Butter and Treacle make them up into Balls the bigness of Pigeons Eggs; and when he is fasting in the morning, give him three of them, and let him fast three hours after; then give him Oats, but refrain giving him Water till the evening; and in this doing four or five times, the Worms will be destroyed orevacuated.

An excellent Salve for any sort of Wound, how to make and apply it.

Take of clarified Rosin a pound, the like quantity of Bees-wax, Sheeps Suet half a pound, Frankincense and Storax, of each half an ounce, Gumaraback four ounces, Hog's Lard a pound and a half, and of the Juyce of green Tobacco half a pint; dissolve and melt them over a gentle fire, adding in the melting four ounces of Turpentine, and the like quantity of Red-wine; and so boil them up into the thick-

neſs of a Salve, by drawing off the watry part, if any remain, and apply it Plaiſter-wiſe on Leather or thick Linnen, in caſe of any Wound, Sorrance, Bruiſe or other Affliction.

An Impoſthume, to ripen or cure.

The greater or leſſer quantity of Matter relating to the Impoſthumation, may be diſcerned by the heat, being more or leſs, as alſo the throbbing and beating; then to break it, apply the Roots of white Lillies and Marſhmallows, the Flowers or Roots of Mareblabs; bruſe them, in the beſt wiſe, in a Mortar with Hog's Lard and Wheat Flower, and Poultis-wiſe apply them to the Swelling; which being thereby brought to a head, Lance it; and having drained the Corruption, apply a Plaſter of the before receited Salve; and by often renewing the Plaiſter, it will draw the Corruption from all parts, and render the Horſe ſound and ſafe.

For any Internal Sickneſs, another good Remedy, never before publiſhed.

If you would have your Horſe be moſtly exempted from Infirmities, eſpecially ſuch as are Internal; after having let him Bloud in due ſeaſon, or as the Malady requires it, and given him, if need requre it, an opening Clyſter made of Camomil, Marſhmallows, the Flowers of Arch-angel and Comfrey, boiled in Milk or Ale;

Take round *Ariſtolochia*, *Gentian*, and the Roots of three leav'd-graſs, of each two ounces, Race-Ginger, and Nutmegs, of each an ounce, the Seeds of Cardamoms, and the Juyce of Hyſop, each two ounces, Indian Spikenard two drams, Licoriſh an ounce, *Diaſcordium* two ounces, Raiſins in the Sun a pound, and twelve blew Figs; boil theſe in a Pottle of White-wine till a third part be conſumed, and give it the Horſe to drink warm.

This is ſucceſsfully given in caſe of *Surfeit*, *Feaver*, *Peſtilence*, *Pains in the Belly* or *Stomach*, *Internal Bruiſes*, *Inflamations of the Liver*, or *Conſumption of the Lungs*, and the like.

For the Ach, Weakneſs or Numbneſs of the Joynts.

The occaſion of this Grievance comes either from an unhappy Strain, or a contraction of gellied watry Humours caused by Cold, and too much Moiſture: To cure and remove which Aches and Pains, &c.

Mix

Mix *Acopium* with *Canary*, and when you find it very warm, anoint the place grieved therewith, chafing it in with your hand, or a hot cloth, and in a weeks time it will remove the Diſorder, eſpecially if it proceed from Cold; but if from a Strain, then take *Aqua vitæ* and the flower of Brimſtone, with a ſmall quantity of the Oyl of Spike; heat them hot, and with a hot cloth anoint the place grieved, bathing and ſuppling it in, ſwathing the place about with a Rowler dipped in melted Bees-wax and Hog's Lard.

How to ſtay any violent Looſneſs.

This diſorder in the Body happens many ways, but eſpecially by raw and unwholeſome feeding: To remedy which, Take of the Juyce of Sloes a pint, half a pint of the Juyce of Sennegreen, Bean-flower and Bole-armorick, each two ounces, Allom one ounce; boil them together to the conſumption of a third part; and then making that up with Milk give it the Horſe faſting; and ſo do for three days ſucceſſively.

The Lampas; *what it is, and how to Cure it.*

The *Lampas* is no other than a ſwelling that proceeds from rank Bloud, and appears in proud fleſh on the inſide of the Lips, the way to deſtroy it is, when you have gagged the Horſe's mouth that he cannot ſhut it, take an Iron with a flat top, the ſhape of which you find in the Margin; and heating it red hot, burn away the fleſh, and then rub the place with a roaſted Onion and Bay-ſalt, and in a ſhort time the ſwelling will diſappear, and the Horſe be better able to eat his meat.

For the Fig in the Foot of a Horſe, the Cure.

This Sorrance is a lump of unnatural Fleſh that grows upon the Fruſh of the Heel, in the ſhape of a Fig, and is frequently cauſed by the defect of thoſe that undertake to cure a wound or hurt in that part occaſioned by a ſtub or thorn. And now to remove this,

Cut away ſo much of the Hoof that by the means of the Inciſion there may be a ſpace or difference between the Fruſh and the Sole; then dip a Spunge in an Ointment made of Verdigreaſe, Bees-wax and Hog's Lard, and binding

UMI - 1994

ing it hard on, it will in three or four times ſo doing deſtroy the proud fleſh, and render the Horſe's Foot ſound and well.

For the Flanks, a Diſeaſe ſo called, and the way to remedy it.

This proceeds from a Wrench, Stroak or Pain in the Back which cauſes a Swelling, *&c.* And to prepare it for the Remedy, ſhave away the Hair where you find the grief: Then make a Charge and apply it; which may be made with ſucceſs after this manner:

Take *Bole-armoniack*, *Conſolida Majora*, *Galbanum*, *Maſtick*, *Per-roſin* and *Apoponax*, of each two Ounces or leſs, according to the largeneſs or ſmallneſs of the place grieved: bruiſe them well to Powder, adding of *Sanguis Draconis* and *Sol-armoniack*, of each three Drams; Wheat-meal, and the Whites of Eggs, with ſo much Vinegar as will make them into a Cataplaſm or Plaiſter, commonly called a Charge, and lay it warm to the place grieved, being ſpread upon a Sheep-skin: And this being renewed four or five times, will effect the cure.

The Shackle-gall, and its Cure.

This is generally occaſioned by the fretting of the Shackle or Fetlock, and ſometimes by Ropes with which the Horſe is tied: To cure which,

Take a good handful of Plantane, and boil it in Milk to a ſoftneſs: then take ſix Ounces of Allom, and two Ounces of Sugar-candy, and put them in, beaten to Powder; then add as much Vinegar as will make a hard Curd come on the top: then the Curd being taken off, waſh the place with what remains; and then the Hair being clipped away, anoint the place with Hogs-lard, and the Powder of Turmerick; or you may do it with the Oyntment of Tobacco, or Honey, Verdigreaſe and Red-wine, made up into an Oyntment. And this likewiſe is good for a gall'd Back, or a Gall in any part of the Horſe's Body.

A Horſe that is gravelled, how to remedy.

When by the Horſe's crimpling and lameneſs you perceive he is gravelled by travelling in foul Ways, take off his Shooes and ſearch well his Feet, clearing away all the Stones or Sand you can find there: Then, to reſtore him,

Take

Take Bees-wax an Ounce, Deers-ſuet, Roſin and Boars-greaſe of each an Ounce, and four Ounces of the Juyce of Houſleek; make them into an Oyntment, and apply it hot on a Wad of Flax, ſtopping it in.

Of Cataplaſms or Poultiſes.

NOtwithſtanding what has been mentioned, there are divers Cataplaſms or Poultiſes of ſingular uſe, and, as the beſt of this kind, take the ſubſequent.

For any Swelling, Impoſthume, Rankling, Wound or broken Bone, a Cataplaſm or Poultis.

Take of new Milk one Pint, crumble into it White-bread, and boil it till it becomes thick; add then the White of an Egg, and an Ounce of Olive-oyl; mingle them well together, and apply them Poultis-wiſe to the place grieved as hot as conveniently may be endured.

For a Swelling in the Throat or under the Ears.

Take Neetsfoot-oyl a Pint, of the Leaves of Marrigolds a Handful, Saffron a Dram, and of White-bread four Ounces; boil them together till they become the thickneſs of a Poultis, and apply them hot to the place grieved.

To draw or break a Boil or Ulcerous Sore, &c.

Take the Flowers of Lady-cups, the Roots of Cuckow-pintle, the Leaves of Burdock, and the Flowers or Roots of Water-lillies, of each half a Handful: boil them in a Quart of Linſeed-oil, and maſh them into a ſmallneſs: which done, apply them Plaiſter or Poultis-wiſe, binding them hot to the place grieved, as conveniency directs.

An excellent Poultis to aſſwage any Pain or ſuperate Tumour.

Take the Leaves of Mallows half a Handful, of Groundſel one Handful; boil them in Running-water till they may be made into a Maſh; then add to them a Pint of Cream and two Ounces of crumbled Wheaten-bread, of Mutton-

ſuet

suet half a Pound, Oyl of Roses two Ounces and the Whites of two Eggs; boil them all till they become the thickness of a Poultis, and in that manner apply it to the place grieved, renewing it as you see occasion.

A Poultis to break any Infectious Sore.

Take of Lilly-roots two Ounces, Marshmallows and Violet-roots, of each the like quantity; Rye-meal and Linseed-oyl of each four Ounces; of Barley and Wheat-meal, each an Ounce; to these add two blew Figs; of the Flowers of Camomil half an Ounce; and the Bark of Elder-roots the like quantity; boil them stamped and well bruised till they may be strained into a Pulp; then add again Barrows-grease and Oyl of Almonds, of each two Ounces, and apply it to the place till you perceive it drawn to a head; after which you may lance it, and with a Plaister of *Diaculum* draw out the Infectious Matter, and heal the grieved part.

To disperse the Flux or Oppression of Blood in any Part.

Take Frankincense, Alloes, Dragons-blood and Bole-armoniack, of each half an Ounce, the Whites of two Eggs, and the Wool of an old Hare; mingle them well in a Pint of *Aqua-vitæ*, and let them boil till they come to a thickness; then Plaister-wise apply them to the place grieved as hot as may be endured.

For an Impostbume or sudden Swelling in any part of the Body.

Take French Barley a Pound, bruise it with the like quantity of Linseed, shread them to a handful of Marshmallows, and seeth them together in a Quart of new Milk till they come to a solid thickness; then, as hot as may be endured, apply them to the Swelling, and so continue to do for four or five days successively.

In case of the Palsey in the Head, (a Disease seldom happening in Horses) apply this Poultis, viz.

Take a large Onion, roast it well, then put to it an Ounce of the Oyl of Spike, Olive-oyl and Lavender-flowers of each two Ounces; Marjorum and Winter-savory, of each half a Handful, well shred; boil these, and apply them as a Poultis, hot as may be well endured. And thus much, in brief, of things in this kind.

Rare and New Experiments.

AS for Balms and Balſoms, ſeeing they are wonderful uſeful on ſundry occaſions, I think it not amiſs to ſpeak ſomething more of them and their uſe by way of Receipt. And firſt,

To heal and contract any Wound.

Take of Mummy three ounces, Alloes Epatick half the quantity, Stone-pitch two ounces, Sarcol half an ounce, Gum-arabick and Maſtick, of each a quarter of an ounce; add to theſe half a pint of *Aqua-vitæ*; melt and order them over a gentle Fire till they become a Balm; and then, as occaſion ſerves, dipping a Lineament in the contracted Medicament, apply it to the Wound as often as is convenient.

An inward Balm to deſtroy Worms, and heal Internal Bruiſes.

Take Oyl of Turpentine half a pound, Myrrh, Storax and *Galbanum*, of each an ounce; Cloves and Cinnamon in Powder, of each half an ounce; Deers-ſuet half a pound, and of Amber-greaſe a dram; make them into a Balm over a gentle Fire, and give the Horſe in warm Ale the quantity of a Walnut faſting.

An excellent Balm in caſe of any Sprain, Internal Bruiſe, Swelling, Blaſting, old Sore or Gun-ſhot.

Take of Turpentine an ounce, *Galbanum* two ounces, Cicatrine, Maſtick, Cloves, Galingal, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, Cubebs, of each an ounce; Gum of Jope half an ounce; beat them and well incorporate them, then diſtil them over a gentle Fire in a Glaſs; and when the thinneſt part is drawn off, the next will be a Red Oyl, and that is it which is to be applied with the greateſt ſucceſs, though the firſt is wonderful efficacious and uſeful on many occaſions.

An excellent Balm to be given a Horſe inward, in caſe of a Conſumption.

Take of the beſt Turpentine a pound, Pine-Roſin a fourth part; Myrrh, Frankincenſe and Maſtick, of each two ounces; Sarcocol, Mace, Wood of Alloes, of each an ounce,

ounce, and of Saffron half an ounce: put them in a Glass Retort in hot Embers; and after the Water, or the clearer part is drawn off, there will come forth a reddish Oyl, which may be given him four drams in a Morning fasting, suffering him to take it in half a pint of warm Ale.

An excellent Red Water to cure Ulcers.

Make a Lye of Ashwood-ashes, that a gallon of the liquid part may be drawn from it; and add to it a gallon of Tanners Ousey, in which no Leather has been steeped; steep in these two pounds of Madder, and dissolve half a pound of Roach-allom; then let them simper over a soft Fire till a third part be consumed; after which run it through a fine Sieve, and dust into it Bole-armoniack: which done, set it again over the Fire till it become to half the quantity: and so, as you see occasion, you may wash the place grieved with it.

An excellent Water to allay any Internal Heat or Feaverish Indispondency.

Take of Savory, Sorrel, Bugloss, Burrage and Endive, of each a handful: chop them small, and boil them in two quarts of Running-water, scumming it till half be consumed, and add as much Verjuyce as will make it up the first quantity; sweeten the liquid part with brown Sugar, and reserve it for your use, giving the Horse half a pint at a time fasting.

In case a Horse be troubled with the Stone, an excellent Water.

Take two quarts of new Milk, and of Saxifrage, Parsley, Mint, Fennel, Pellitory of the Wall, Mother of Thyme, green Sage and the Roots of Rhadishes, each an ounce: bruise the latter, adding two quarts of White-wine; and so, if your conveniency will admit, distil them, if not boil them, and strain out the liquid part, and give him half a pint at a time, having first scraped into it the Powder of a roasted Nutmeg.

For any Disease in the Eyes, another excellent Water, &c.

Take of Maiden-hair and Ground-ivy, a handful of each, the flowers of Arch-angel the like quantity, the powder of Alablaster two ounces, and of the roots of Wormwood dried and beaten into powder an ounce: distil or well con-

cost

coct theſe; and when you have ſo done, waſh the Eye grieved, by dipping a Feather into the liquid part.

An excellent Purgation for Gravel in the Bladder or Kidneys.

Of Parſley-roots take a handful, white Saxifrage and Aſhen-keys, or the bark of the Aſh-tree root, of each an ounce; of Pariſtone, a Herb ſo called, half a handful; Eringo-roots ſliced two ounces; boil them with half a pint of Coriander-ſeeds in a gallon and a half of new Ale, and give the Horſe a pint of the liquid part to drink, as hot as he can well endure it.

For the Ulceration of the Yard, an excellent Water.

Take Spring-water a gallon, quench in it a hot Iron and Flint-ſtones very often; infuſe into it the Leaves of red Roſes, or Roſe-cakes, four ounces; Pomegranate-peels, and the flowers of the ſame, each half an ounce; add of the Juyce of Plantane and Houſleek, each half a pint; of Alom and white Copras each half an ounce: boil them over a gentle Fire, and inject the liquid part into the Yard with a Syringe, and it will effect, in often uſing, the Cure.

An excellent Powder for the Falling-ſickneſs or Falling-evil in a Horſe, &c.

Take the Roots of Elder, dry them in an Oven till they may be beaten into a Powder; add the Powder of a roaſted Nutmeg and Storax, each an ounce; the Aſhes of the Wool of a Fox, half an ounce; and of the Powder of Calamint a dram; mix theſe well, and give him half an ounce at a time, in a quarter of a pint of Canary.

A Powder for the Ague, which frequently happens, eſpecially to young Horſes.

Take the Herb Mercury, Plantane-leaves, *Cardus Benedictus* and Rue, of each half a handful: dry them, that they may be beaten to Powder, and give the Horſe an ounce of it in a quart of Ale, wherein two handfuls of Centaury have been boiled, as hot as he can well endure it: and ſo renew the Doſe as you ſhall find occaſion.

To Purge Choler and Flegm, an excellent Remedy.

Take of Turbith an ounce, Ginger, Cinnamon, Maſtick, Gallinga, and Alloes Epatick, of each half an ounce; Diagredium,

UMI - 1994

gredium, Rhubarb and Senna, of each a dram; dry, bruiſe and make them into a Powder, giving the Horſe the whole quantity at two Doſes in warm Ale or Milk.

An excellent Bath to allay any Swelling, or ſuch-like Diſorder, eſpecially Diſeaſes in the Legs, occaſioned by the deſcending of evil Humours, &c.

Take the Roots and Bark of Pomegranate, the Flowers of Comfrey, and of Acrons, each a handful, Camomil and Fumitory, of each a handful, black Helebore and Hyſop the like quantity; boil them with a gallon of Water, and when a third part is conſumed, apply with a Woollen-cloth the remainder to the place grieved as hot as may be well endured.

A Bath to ſoften and mollifie the Skin.

Take the Roots of Marſhmallows and white Lillies; bruiſe them with Fenegreek-ſeeds, Peletory of the Wall, and Violet-leaves, the flowers of Camomil and Melliot, each an ounce, Neats-foot-oil, the Oil of Lillies and Hog's Lard, each four ounces; add to them all a quart of Water, boil and ſtrain out the liquid part, uſing it as hot as may be by way of Application, *&c.*

To ſtanch Blood in any Vein or Artery.

Take Alloes Epatick and *Olibanum*, of each half an ounce, and the Wool of an old Hare; bruiſe them with the White of an Egg, and ſpread them on Cotton-wool, binding them to the place, and there ſuffering them to continue till ſuch time as you find the Blood is turned back, and the Film knit together, which will be within the ſpace of two or three days.

An excellent Medicament to provoke a Horſe to Vomit, as alſo to purge the Belly.

Take Elder-root-rind, bruiſe it ſmall, to the quantity of two ounces, the like quantity of Spurge-lawrel and Turmerick; let them ſteep in a pint of White-wine a night and a day, and give the liquid part to the Horſe very warm.

An excellent Purge, good on ſundry occaſions.

Take Senna, Coriander-ſeeds, Alloes, and the Juyce of Savin, of each an ounce; ſteep and bruiſe them in a quart of Ale, then give him the liquid part faſting, as hot as may be well endured, for two mornings ſucceſſively, ordering them

them well to his Dreſſing and Diet, that he neither over-feed nor catch cold.

For a Joynt-ſickneſs.

Take Ants Eggs, together with ſome of the Ants, a ſmall quantity, add the Keys of an Aſh-tree, the Roots of Briony, and thoſe of Burdock; boil them in Whey, and with the liquid part anoint the Joynts as hot as may be well endured, binding up and keeping your Horſe warm, *&c.*

For an Internal Ulcer.

Take of Bees-wax four ounces, Turpentine the like quantity Conſerve of Red-roſes an ounce, Deer's Suet two ounces, Storax half an ounce, Myrrh the like quantity, and Oil of ſweet Almonds, as much as will make them into a Balſom, and give it the Horſe, an ounce at a time in a pint of warm Ale.

An excellent Electuary for a dangerous Cough or ratling Cold.

Take Germander, Horehound, Hyſop, Agremony, Bittany, Liverwort and Harts-tongue, of each a handful, clean ſtripped and waſhed; boil them in three pints of Water till they are very ſoft, and till the Water be conſumed, that they may be maſhed into a thickneſs; then add the Powder of Licoriſh, Elecampane-roots and Honey, ſo much as will make it into an Electuary; and by ſo ding, and giving each morning the quantity of a Walnut to your Horſe faſting, it will wonderfully help him.

Many may be further taken notice on of this kind, but theſe being the rareſt, neweſt, and the beſt approved, I hope the Practitioner will have ſuch Satisfaction herein, that he will need no more.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

The Symptoms of Diſeaſes, Sorrances, Diſtempers, Grievances, or the like, in general and particular, how to foreſee them, and prevent them; as alſo to know when they happen, &c.

HAving paſſed over all the material Diſeaſes and Sorrances any ways incident, hurtful or dangerous in the plaineſt, ſafeſt, and eaſieſt Method; it now remains that I ſpeak ſomething of the Symptoms of Diſeaſes and Diſtempers in general, that they may be the brieflier comprehended, and afterward give Directions for making Unguents, Salves, Poultiſes, Clyſters, Suppoſitories, Purging-potions, *&c.* which ought always to be kept in a readineſs for ſundry uſes and emergent occaſions, with ſuch reaſonable Directions as may add to what has been already treated of: and of theſe in their order.

The Curious, as I have formerly hinted, have ever had a great regard to the Complexion of a Horſe, thereby to draw from thence more than bare conjectures of the bodily ſtate or conſtitutions relating to health or ſickneſs. And ſince too much of this kind cannot be well laid down, nor more than ſufficiently handled, I ſhall make theſe further Obſervations than what hitherto I have made:

The Strangles are ſignified by the hanging out, and unſeemly colour of a Horſe's tongue, and by the faintneſs of his breathing.

When a Horſe is very thirſty, and ſeems very little affected towards his provender, then has he the ſymptoms of a Fever, or ſome hot Diſeaſe that afflicts the heart and liver, or elſe it may ſignifie the putrefaction of the lungs: but when he eats largely, and deſires not much water, it denotes a cold liver, and that the Horſe is ſubject to groſs humours, by reaſon the heat cannot concoct the quantity of nutriment as it ought, and therefore it is not amiſs to reſtrain him from eating altogether ſo much as he requires, or at leaſt to give it him by degrees, that it may leaſurely digeſt.

If with exceeding greedineſs he devour his meat and drink, then beware he be not troubled with the diſeaſes of the Spleen, or putrefaction of the Lungs.

If the Breath of a Horſe, without travelling or other force or violence, be found very hot, or ſo much as is more than uſual, it denotes the Symptom of ſome feveriſh Diſeaſe approaching.

If the left ſide be much ſwelled, and there be no apparent cauſe, then proceeds it from the diſorder of the Spleen; and if the legs on that ſide be likewiſe ſwelled, then it commonly proceeds to the Dropſie.

Drivelling or noiſome water deſcending or iſſuing from the Mouth or Noſtrils of the Horſe, denotes the wet Cough; and if it be gellied, or the like, then it threatens him with the Staggers.

The dullneſs of the Countenance, lolling of the Ears, and hanging of the Head, are ſigns of the Megrim, or extraordinary Pains in the Head.

If diſorderly Pantings appear on the Breaſt, Sides, or any part of the Body, then does the Horſe labour under ſome Sickneſs that afflicts the Heart or Liver.

If the Mouth be foul and furred, and the Tongue look yellowiſh, then the Lungs are defective, and tending to a Conſumption.

The hollowneſs of the Temples, denotes either the Stranges, or that the Horſe is very old.

Shortneſs of Breath, hanging of the Eye-lids, and beating of the Flanks, denotes a Fever.

A cold Swelling under the Throat, with a ratling in the Head, ſignifie the approaching of the Glanders: If about the Tongue-roots ſmall Knobs appear, then it ſignifies Cold, *&c.*

If the Horſe offer to Cough, and be faint in ſo doing, as not throughly able to bring up what he offers at, then is it occaſioned by the ſwelling or riſing of the Lungs, or oppreſſive Flegm ſettled there, which obſtructs the Lungs in the performance of their office.

The ſtairing up of the hair, and hardneſs of the ſkin, with dejected looks, and lankneſs of the belly, denote the Horſe foundered in the Body, and ſometimes the Wind-cholick,

or

or Stone is ſignified thereby, as alſo the Yellows; which are all dangerous Diſtempers in a Horſe.

If the ſkin ſtick to the ribs, ſo that it cannot be well raiſed, then the Horſe is troubled with that Infirmity which we commonly call Hide-bound.

An uneven ſtiffneſs in going, denotes ſome ſtrain, wrench, cold ſwelling in the joynts, or foundering in the feet, *&c.*

If a Horſe have a ſpongy Wart full of bloud, it is an Anbury; if a knotty Ulcer creeping along the Vein, it is a Farcy; if Scabby or Ulcerous upon the Body, and about the Neck, it proceeds from the Mange; if it ſingly ſpread abroad, and that but in one place, then is it held to be the Canker.

The Botts, or ſuch like Inſects in the paunch or belly of a Horſe, you ſhall know by the Horſe's endeavouring to ſtrike thereat with his feet, his lying down and wallowing himſelf, and his often turning his head back and looking upon his ſides.

If the Horſe be over-covetous to lie down on the right ſide, it ſignifies corrupt bloud ſetled in the Cavas of the Liver, and occaſions extraordinary heat, which by the preſſure of the Liver is augmented.

A Horſe's ſpreading, when laid down, generally denotes the approach of the Dropſie, and his often groaning, the Cholick, or the Heart's being oppreſſed with bad bloud: And thus of other Signs and Symptoms, moſt, or the moſt part whereof, I have in this Chapter; and what has been before-mentioned, is effectually diſcuſſed according to the beſt Experimental Obſervances that have been made. From whence I ſhall proceed to give Directions for ſundry choice Ointments and Salves, highly neceſſary to be kept in ſtore, and uſed on ſundry occaſions, as neceſſity requires; and other matters altogether as material.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIV.

Directions for Making and Preparing Oyntments, Oyls, Salves, Waters, Purgations, Poultiſes, Charges, Supplements, Pills, Powders, &c. ſingular good in caſe of any Diſtemper or Sorrance: Many of them never before made publick.

ALthough I have mentioned many famous Oyntments and Salves in the courſe of the Cures, yet ſome there are which may indifferently ſerve for moſt Sorrances and Griefs of any kind; and theſe I ſhall chiefly name, and direct how to make them, becauſe they may be gotten in a readineſs, and thereby the Party not be to ſeek them, nor his Ingredients, when the urgency of the Horſe's Diſtemper or Grief requires the Application.

An Oyntment to ſearch any Wound or Ulcerated Sore, or any thing of the like nature.

Take of Bees-wax four ounces, Turpentine the like quantity, the Juyce of Spurge-lawrel two ounces, Deers-ſuet half a pint, Verdigreaſe an ounce, Allom calcined two ounces, and Hogs-lard as much as will make it into an Oyntment over a gentle Fire. This, by often uſing, will not only ſearch the Wound, and diſcover dead, proud, or putrified Fleſh, but cleanſe it, and cauſe it to heal, reſtoring the good Fleſh, and rendring it eaſie to cure.

An Oyntment excellent good in caſe of Botches, Boyls, Scabs, or the like Sorrances.

Take the Juyce of green Tobacco half a pint, or Deers-ſuet a pound, the Powder of Dandelyon-roots two ounces, as much of Soap-makers Aſhes, and half a pint of the Lees of Wine: make them up into an Oyntment with half a pint of Olive-oyl, and an ounce of the Oyl of *Petrolum.*

To skin any Wound, an excellent Oyntment.

Take of Dogs-greaſe two ounces, half the quantity of black Soap, of the Powder of calcined Roach-Allom two drams, the Juyce of Mugwort an ounce: make them into an

an Oyntment over a gentle Fire; and when the Wound begins to fill with fleſh, anoint it over.

To molliſie and aſſwage any Swelling, an excellent Oyntment.

Take of Nut-oyl a quarter of a pint, Neatsfoot-oyl half a pint, and Linſeed-oyl the like quantity: add to theſe the Juyce of Plantane a quarter of a pint, and four ounces of the Oyl of Earthworms: boil them over a gentle Fire to a convenient thickneſs, and apply the Oyntment to the place grieved as warm as may be well ſuffered, and chafe it in with your warm hand when it begins to cool.

An excellent Oyntment to cool and allay any Inflammation.

Take of the Oyl of Marſhmallows half a pint, the Juyce of Mandrake-roots two ounces, Dogs-fat four ounces, or inſtead thereof that of Hogs-lard, *Spermaceti* two ounces, and freſh Butter a quarter of a pound: make them into an Oyntment over a gentle Fire, and, as occaſion ſerves, apply them to the place grieved till you find the extraordinary heat abate.

An excellent Oyntment, or rather Balſam to be inwardly given a Horſe for Obſtructions, Bruiſes, and other Ailments and Grievances.

Take of refined and rarified Turpentine two ounces, Stags-ſuet the like quantity, Amber-greaſe two ſcruples, *Olibanum* an ounce, Oyl of Roſes two ounces, and a dram of the Oyl of Amber: heat theſe gently till they incorporate, and then take a ſmall quantity, and with fine Flower make a Paſte to the bigneſs of a Walnut, and give it the Horſe to ſwallow; giving him after it half a pint of warm Mallaga.

To make a green Oyntment, proved by Experience more effectual than what has formerly been publiſhed.

Take the Juyce of Sage two ounces, as much of that of Rue, an ounce of Verdigreaſe, and of *Aqua-vitæ* half a quartern: mix theſe over a gentle Fire, and add of the Powder of Elicampane-roots an ounce, with the Powder of white Copras calcined half an ounce: make them into an Oyntment with Olive-oyl, and half an ounce of the Oyl of Turpentine.

An excellent Remedy for the Staggers or any Pain that ſuddenly takes a Horſe, ſometimes to the loſs of his Life.

Take the Fat of the Guts of a Capon two ounces, Oyl of ſweet Almonds two ounces, of Olive-oyl half a pint: Incorporate them well over a gentle Fire, then drop into them the Chymical Oyl of Nutmeg a dram, and the like quantity of that of Spikenard and Bay-berries; and having incorporated them farther into an Oyntment, when you perceive your Horſe afflicted, dip a Feather in the Oyntment, and thruſt it up the Noſtrils of the Horſe, and anoint them as high as may be; then burn under his Noſe Storax on a Chafing-diſh of Charcole, placing a Tunnel ſo over it, that the Smoke may aſcend into the Noſtrils only. This is likewiſe good for any cold Rheum that afflicts the Head, and will bring away the ſuperfluous humour.

An excellent Salve for any Wound.

Take Hogs-lard half a pound, Bees-wax a pound, Stone-pitch ſix ounces, unſlacked Lime beaten into Powder an ounce, the Powder of dried Fox-lungs an ounce; make them into a Salve with two ounces of Turpentine, and apply it Plaiſter-wiſe to any Gangrene, ulcerous Sore, Botch, Strain, Slip, Spavin, after its being opened, or other Sorrance, and by due application it will anſwer your expectation.

An approved Salve, to draw any Stub, Thorn, or Splinter of Bone or Wood out of the Fleſh.

Take of Burgundia-pitch four ounces, the like quantity of Per-roſin, Nut-oyl two ounces, and the like quantity of Linſeed-oyl, and an ounce of the Juyce of Hemlock: make them into the thickneſs of a Salve, and apply it Plaiſter-wiſe to the grieved part, till you find the head of the offenſive matter; and then with your Inſtrument dilate the fleſh, and draw it out.

To fill a Wound, Ulcer or the like with good fleſh, a Plaiſter.

Take Mutton-ſuet half a Pound, the Juyce of Baum a quarter of a pint, the Oyntment of Marſhmallows and Groundſel of each two ounces; burnt Allom in Powder two ounces; Roſin half a pound, and Bees-wax as much as will make it up into a Salve.

UMI - 1994

A Salve to draw Corruption from the bottom of any Wound, or to draw a Swelling, or any such grievance to a head.

Take Turpentine half a pound, Linseed-oil half a pint, Chalk beaten to powder an ounce, the Juyce of Orpin half a quartern, *Galbanum* two ounces, and Oil of Vitriol a dram; make them into a Salve, and apply them to the place grieved, and in so doing you will find your expectation answered.

To ripen any Tumour or asswage any Swelling not abounding with extraordinary Humours.

Take the fat of an Urchin or Hedge-hog four ounces, Tarr two ounces, old Cheese well beaten in a Mortar four ounces, the Juyce of Garlick half a quarter of a pint, Bees-wax six ounces, and Stone-pith six ounces; make them into a Salve, and apply the Plaister on a piece of Sheep-leather.

An excellent Poultis for a Tumour or Swelling.

Take Linseed-oil half a pint, the Whites of six Eggs, Bole-armoniack two ounces, Groundsel and Smallage of each a handful well bruised in a Mortar, Celendine and Comfrey the like quantity so ordered; fry them together, and lay them on as hot as may be. This either allays the Swelling if only fleshy, occasioned by a stroke or Saddle-pinching, or brings it to a head, in case it proceeds from Humours gathering or contracting in one place.

A Charge to ease a Pain in the Back, or for any Sprain.

Take new Cow-dung four ounces, the Roots of Burdock two ounces, washed and sliced, Borage and Bugloss, of each a handful, Oil of Bays six ounces; bruise them well together, and heating them over the fire, suffer them to be as hot as may be well endured, and apply them as a Poultis.

To mollifie any Chap or rough Sore.

Take Comfrey, the Roots of Scabeous, and the leaves of Plantain; boil them in Olive-oil, being first well bruised to a softness, then add Neats-foot-oil, half the quantity of the Olive-oil, and then strain off the liquid part, and with it noint the place grieved.

For the Eyes of a Horse afflicted by any means, an approved Water to cure or ease them.

Take of the Juyce of Pimpernel and Eyebright, of each

a like quantity, both consisting of half a pint; add to them the Powder of *Lapis Calaminaris*, quenched in White-wine, an ounce, and as much of the Powder of burnt Allom, two drams of the Calcine of Crabs-eyes, and as much of the powder'd pith of Oysters; dip a feather in them, well mingled by stirring, and rub it so dipped into the Eyes.

A Water to wash the Mouth in case of any Sorrance or Defect.

Take Spring-water a pottle, Roach-allom a pound, and English Honey the like quantity; dissolve them into the Water over a gentle fire, and add half a pint of the Juyce of Hyssop, and the like quantity of that of Celendine or Vervine; boil them to the consumption of a third part, and with the Water wash the Horse's Mouth as you see occasion.

A Pill good for any Internal Disorder, &c.

Take of Alloes Epatick half an ounce, Powder of Rhubarb the like quantity, the Juyce of Water-cresses half a quarter of a pint, and the Berries of Juniper dried and beaten into Powder an ounce; make these with the Oil of Myrtle, into Pills as big as Hazle-nuts, and give him four at a time successively in warm Ale or new Milk every morning.

A Supplement exceeding good for any Strain or Grief in the Sinews, &c.

Take Bacon Lard half a pound, the Oil or Ointment of Smallage two ounces, black Snails a handful, the Powder of Mastick two ounces; bruise and incorporate them, and so apply them to the place grieved.

A Vomit for a Horse that has a queesy Stomach, thereby to render him a good Appetite.

Take Spurge-lawrel a handful, Briony-root an ounce; boil them in a quart or three pints of Water, then strain out the liquid part, and having sweetned it with Sugar-candy, give it him hot, and tend him that he catch not cold.

To purge Melancholly.

Take Scamony a dram, the Juyce or Seeds of black Hellebore two ounces; dissolve the former in, and mingle the latter with a pint of warm Ale, and give it him to drink fasting.

To purge Phlegm.

Take of the Juyce of Ivy-leaves or berries half an ounce.

UMI - 1994

or the Decoction of them being very ſtrong, add the Grains of Cochneal two ounces, the roots of Fern waſhed and ſliced two ounces, Colocinthius an ounce; make of theſe a drench with White-wine; give it the Horſe warm, and keep him two hours after faſting.

CHAP. XXV.

Clyſters, how to make them, and on what occaſion they ought to be applied in order to their effectual working and bringing away bad Humours.

SInce Clyſters, in caſe of Internal Diſtempers, are very neceſſary, I cannot omit them, but proceed, amongſt other things, to ſpeak of ſuch as cannot but be uſeful, and eſpecially thoſe that are capable of purging the ſeveral Humours, or at leaſt-ways to cauſe an evacuation of thoſe Crudities, they have contracted in the Bowels. And in this caſe, if your Horſe is very laxative, which frequently is occaſioned by flegmatick Humours,

Take of the Juyce of Peletory of the Wall a quarter of a pint; add to it Verjuyce and Olive-oil, of each half a pint, and of ſtale Beer a quart; boil them together to the conſumption of a ſixth part, and being warm, put them into your Gliſter-bag, and force them up the body of the Horſe, and by binding down his Tail, ſuffer them to remain there, if poſſible, for the ſpace of an hour, and give him thereupon Water wherein Seabeous has been concocted.

In caſe of any Peſtilential Diſeaſe, occaſioned by a cholerick or ſery Humour.

Take of the Seeds of *Coloquintida*, cleared from the huſks, half an ounce, the Juyce of Centaury and Wormwood of each an ounce, *Caſtoreum* half the like quantity, Juyce of Wood-ſorrel two ounces, and half a pint of Olive-oil; concoct them in two quarts of Water a little ſweetned with brown Sugar, and force it into the Horſe's body, uſing him as before is mentioned.

Fu

For any Internal Diſtemper proceeding from Melancholly.

Take Anniſeeds, and the Seeds of Mallows beaten to Powder of each an ounce; boil 'em with a ſmall quantity of Savin in a quart of Whey or Skim-milk; then add a quarter of a pound of freſh Butter, and ſo having well ſtrained out the liquid part, give it him in his Fundament luke-warm.

For any Diſtemper Internal, occaſioned by ſanguine corrupt Bloud, or watry Humours, by means of bad Concoction or Obſtruction, &c.

Take of the leaves and roots of Marſhmallows a handful, Violet-leaves double the quantity, Linſeed and Coriander-ſeeds, of each a handful, White-lilly-roots an ounce, the juyce of Senne the like quantity with the latter; boil them in two quarts of Water to the conſumption of a third part; and then add Olive-oil a pint, and give it him warm Clyſter-wiſe.

For Sickneſs in general an approved Clyſter.

Take of the Oil of Dill and Camomil, of each an ounce, the Oil of Caſſa half an ounce, the Juyce of Violet-leaves two ounces; then having concocted a good quantity of Mallows in two quarts of Water, ſtrain the liquid part, and put the fore-mentioned Ingredients therein, and adminiſter them bloud-warm. This in all violent Diſeaſes eſpecially, is ſingular good.

In caſe of Reſtringency or hard Binding.

Take the Juyce of Fumitory a quarter of a pint, the Syrup of Roſes two ounces, and as much of the Oyl of Bays, Neats-foot-oyl half a pint, and of the Juyce of Mulberries two ounces; add to theſe a pint of new Milk, and force them up the Horſe's Fundament very warm, and ſo upon other the like occaſions.

Obſerve in giving of Clyſters, that the quantity muſt in all probability be reduced or augmented according to the quality or temperature of the Horſe. Now note, that if the Horſe be never ſo large, and in good caſe, three quarts is an extraordinary doſe, and one quart is an indifferent one; ſo that I leave it to the diſcretion of the Practitioner to regulate the liquid part as he ſees convenient, leaſt by over-charging the Horſe's Bowels, it burſt forth before it has opportunity to work as it ought, as by being under-

MI - 1994

charged it wants of its force to stir Humours, and cause such an evacuation as is required. And so submitting this to the discretion or judgement of those that shall make experiment, I proceed to other matters altogether as necessary to be understood, both as to what relates to the preservation of health, and remedy of sickness.

CHAP. XXVI.

Cordials, Cordial-Powders, Drinks and Drenches, Purgations and Suppositories, wonderfully conducing to the Health and Strength of a Horse.

Diapente, *an excellent Powder in case of any Cold or Pestilential Disease. To make it,*

TAke *Gentia Baccalani*, Round *Aristolochia*, Myrrh, and and the Powder of Storax, of each an ounce; bruise them distinctly, and pass the Powder through a fine Sieve, and when you see occasion, give the Horse from two to four drams in Muscadel, or other sweet Wine, as warm as may be, and keep him from catching cold: or for want of Wine, give it him in strong Ale, but Wine is better.

An excellent Cordial-Ball to be given in case of any Internal Distemper, and especially to prevent the Consumption or wasting any part, &c.

Take dried Foxs-Lungs an ounce, Methridate two ounces, Powder of Licorish and that of the Seeds of Coriander, of each an ounce; the Powder of Cinamon and Pomegranate-seeds, of each an ounce, Spruce-beer, or the Lees of Claret half a pint: Thicken it with Allom flower till the whole mass be infused therein, and may be made up in Balls as big as Walnuts; and then give him one at a time, as you see occasion, sending after it a hot Drench of Ale or new Milk: This and the former being put into a Glass or Gally-pot, and close stopped up, will keep in a dry place a Twelvemonth.

An

An excellent Drench to Cure any Internal Diſtemper proceeding from any of the four Humours of the Body, &c. eſpecially ſuch as are Peſtilential.

Having let your Horſe blood, if neceſſity, by the Symptoms I have named in the foregoing part of the Book, requires it,

Take a handful of Balm, and as much Worm-wood; dry them till they may be rubbed into a Powder; mix with the Powder the Juyce of Rue four ounces, the Powder of grated Nutmeg, well dried, an ounce, four grains of the Oil of Amber, and two of Bezora ſtone; diſſolve theſe in a quart of Ale, and give the Drench to the Horſe as hot as is convenient, and let him ſtand faſting two hours in a dry Stable after them.

For want of what is before mentioned, Take Anniſeeds, and the Seeds of Cardamums, of each an ounce, Bay-berries and Fenegreek-ſeed the like quantity, the ſifted Powder of the Roots of Elicampane two ounces, Olive-oil half a pint, and a pint of new Milk; mix them well together, and ſweeten the liquid part, whilſt it is ſeething over a fire, with white Sugar, and give it him as warm as is convenient, ordering as before.

Suppoſitories, and their Uſe.

This word ſpeaks the intention of the thing, which is no other than preparing before-hand the Horſe's Body to receive a Purge or Clyſter. Now for the former,

Take Water wherein Wood-ſorrel and Maiden-hair, a Herb ſo called, has been boiled, and give it him to drink with his Provender a day before, or Water wherein Deal Saw-duſt has been boiled or ſteeped; the like you may do with the Leaves of Bays or Holley, or any thing that may either open the Veins, or fix the Humour, ſo that it may be in a readineſs for the Purgation to work on.

The other is to be put up into the Horſe's Fundament, after he is well raked to prepare him for a Clyſter; as a large Candle, a roaſted Onion, Garlick and Rue, bruiſed and made up into a Ball with white Flower, or a Waſh-ball; and theſe muſt be ſuted according to the Humour predominant. And in this caſe, ſome hold what I ſhall name to be as the tick.

UMI - 1994

Take, say they, for Choler, bruised Staveacre and Savin, made into a Ball as big as a Tennis-ball, with Honey and Bean-flower: If for Flegm, Castle-soap a piece as big as a two penny Wash-ball, rowled in Powder of Ginger: If for Melancholly, a red Onion roasted and stuck with Cloves: And, lastly, for Sanguine, or over-flowing of bad Humours, proceeding from the naughtiness of the Bloud, make a Suppository of Honey, Bole-armonick, sweet Butter and bruised Spermint; make them up (with Oat-meal small, ground and sifted) into a paste: And to keep any of these in, which must be done for the space of an hour, you must bind down the Tail, and gently Trot your Horse, and when you perceive him sweat, bring him into the Stable, and drawing forth what remains undissolved in his Fundament, give him the Clyster you have prepared, and expect the success.

CHAP. XXVII.

Perfumes, Baths and Purgations, what they are, and to what end they serve; with the manner how, and under what Considerations they ought to be applied.

PErfumes are much available to remove bad scents, or noisome vapours from the Head and Stomach of a Horse, and being moderately and seasonably applied, greatly contribute to his health: and in this case if the Horse be afflicted with cold Diseases, or those that proceed from cold raw Humours,

Take Storax and Benjamine of each half an ounce, *Olibanum* and Frankincense of each a quarter of an ounce, Oil of *Petrolum* an ounce, bruise the Drugs, and make them up in small Balls as big as a pea; burn them upon a Chafing-dish of Coles, so that the smoak may affect the Mouth and Nostrils of the Horse, and that he may draw it in with his Breath, and to make him the better so to do, put a gag in his Mouth that it may stand open.

If the Horse be troubled with giddiness in his Head, which is

is known by the dulneſs of the Eyes; burn Feathers under his Noſe, ſhavins of Leather or Camel's Hair, or the Seeds of Fennel and Anniſeeds. The Roots of Horſe-radiſh or Rhubarb will have the ſame effect, or any thing of ſtrong ſcent, whether Gums, Oils, Roots, Herbs, or other things of the like nature and quality.

In caſe of Bathing a Horſe, commonly called the Horſe-Bathe, it is no more than the concocting divers Herbs that are cooling and ſupple, and with the liquid part waſh and ſupple the place grieved, and render a limberneſs of the Joynts or remove dirt, or any the like Diſorder or Grievance, and may many times upon a Journey be uſed with ſucceſs to reſtore or refreſh a tired Horſe, being applied warm to his Limbs; and the beſt of this kind take as followeth:

Take Sorrel, Mallows, Groundſel, Camomil, Sparage, Sow-thiſtle, Comfrey and Scabeous, Endive, Bugloſs and Feather-few; boil them in two gallons of Runnig-water, and when you find they are ſufficiently ſeethed, ſtrain out the liquid part: or if you find your Horſe much given to coldneſs, you may boil them in Chamber-lye.

Directions for Purging, according to the eſtate and condition of your Horſe

If you perceive your Horſe of a ſtrong conſtitution, not impaired by diſeaſe or want, then may you give him ſtrong provocatives, that by a conquering quality may prevail againſt the diſtemper; but if he be weak and infeebled, then nature being unable to keep her ſtation, and the potion being ſtrong, great injury may happen, by reaſon of the fixation or ſettlement of the groſs humours and crudities; wherefore the ſudden and violent operation not being capable of removing them, will prey upon, and evacuate thoſe good humours that ſhould ſtrengthen and ſupport the body: And therefore in caſe of weakneſs, a weaker potion muſt be given, that by long continuance and eaſie working, it may by degrees looſen and attract what is offencive. And now for a gentle Purge:

Take two ounces of Turnſole, and half an ounce of the Powder of Alloes; diſſolve them in a quart of Ale, wherein half a dozen of Lawrel-leaves have been concocted: give it him

him warm, and attend the working of it; giving him, the better to hearten him, a Toast dipped in Canary about half an hour after; but if the Horse be strong, that he will dispence with a violent Purge; then

Take of *Colloquintida* three ounces, Rhubarb in Powder an ounce, Scamony two grains; dissolve them in half a pint of the Juyce of Hyssop, and the like quantity of Canary; give them the Horse very warm, and keep him stirring in a warm Stable two hours at least, without giving him any thing; and when by a conquering quality they prevail over the Distemper, give him a warm mash, but no hard meat till six hours after, by which time it will have done working; and in case of cold Distempers you may somewhat augment the Dose. And now as to the Humours, if we take them distinctly, Aloes and Cassa purge Melancholly, *Colloquintida* Flegm, Rhubarb Sanguine, and Scamony Choler. Nor are these the only things that do it, but there are divers others; yet seeing I have largely directed on that occasion, I shall wave them in this Chapter.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Costicks, Corrosives, and Rowelling; what they are, for what cause, and in what manner to be applied.

AS for Costicks and Corrosives, they are potable Cauterizings or Burnings, with Oil, Water or Mineral, Chymically prepared, and sometimes contracted by making a Wound, or breaking the Skin, with Roots and Herbs participating of a fiery Nature, and these are used in eating away dead Flesh, boney or spongy Excrescences; and in case of the Farcy, Mangy, Ring-worm, or the like loathsome dangerous Distempers: and the chief these are,

Aqua-fortis, *Aqua-regis*, Vitriol, Oil of Tartar, Quick-lime, Oil of Spike, Arsnick, or *Realgar*, *Ægyptiacum*, *Crocus-martis*, Mercury Sublimate, Copras, Verdigreese, Allom, Recordal, and of Roots and Flowers:

Burdock-

Burdock-roots, Horſe-radiſh-roots, the Roots of white Lillies, Garlick, Onions, Cuccow-pintle, Feather-few, Briony; the Leaves of Coleworts, Celendine, the great Southernwood, Butter-flowers, Ground-ivy; the Flowers of Mare-blabs, Senna, Saxifrage-water, Lillies, Holyhawks, Scabeous, Rue, Bares-foot or Hellebore, *&c.* The Application of which I leave to the diſcretion of the Practitioner, to make it as he ſees convenient, or conſiſtent with the nature of the Diſtemper, and ſo proceed to ſpeak ſomething of Rowelling, another neceſſary thing to be known.

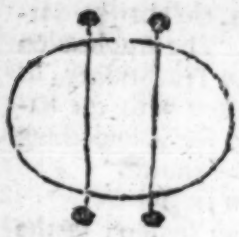
Rowelling, what it is, and how to be performed.

Rowelling is no other than making an Inciſion in the Fleſh, or rather Skin, by taking it up with a Bodkin or other inſtrument, ſo that a ring of Hair, Cord or Leather may be faſtned in it; anoint it with Greaſe, Oil, or other things, thereby to keep the Skin from cloſing upon it, that in the nature of an Iſſue the corrupt Humour may be voided; and this is commonly fixed in the Breaſt or Shoulder of a Horſe, for a ſtrain, ſlip or ſwelling. And for your better inſtruction, obſerve as thus:

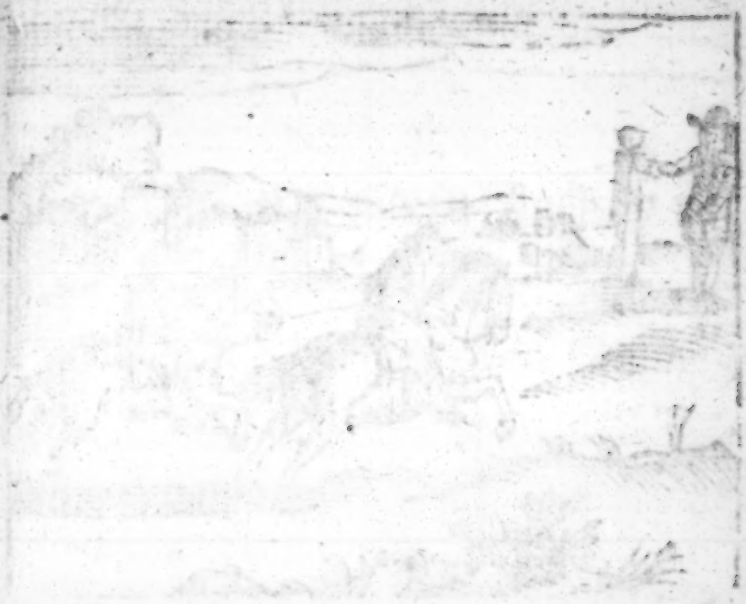
Take a Pen-knife, or other ſharp Knife, and ſlit the Skin right down for the length of an Inch, or more, gently raiſing it with a flat Stick, and ſo do on the other ſide, about half a Fingers breadth diſtant; ſo that the Skin being parted from the Fleſh, you may run your Finger quite through, and ſo put your Rowel in well anointed, and turn it about every other day, freſhly anointing it. And though this be the general way of Rowelling, yet the *French* make a ſlit or hole only, and hollow the Skin from the Fleſh, in circle like a Crown piece; and then cutting a piece of ſtiff unallom'd Leather to the bigneſs, with one indifferent big hole in the middle, and four ſmaller ones, as the Figure in the Margent; then anoint it with Lard or Oil of Marſhmallows, and put it in ſo that the Orifice may be left open for the Corruption to iſſue out through a ſhort quill which they faſten therein, running likewiſe a Needle and Thread through the four ſmall holes to prevent its turning about,

or

or wearing downwards; and ſo by raiſing up the Skin, and blowing the wind into the ſpongy Fleſh, cauſe the Putrefaction to gather and deſcend, that ſo by the evacuation of the Humours the Grievance may find a cure; and that it may lye the cloſer, draw two ſtrong Stitches overthwart, as you perceive the Figure, and let it continue till you perceive Humours well evacuated, and then cutting the Stitches, take it out. And thus have I diſcuſſed the material things relating to this Science. From whence I proceed to other things highly neceſſary to be known, as in the Second Part of this Book your diſcretion may direct you, *&c.*



The



UMI - 1994

The Compleat FARRIER.

THE
Gentleman's New Jockey:
OR,
FARRIER's Approved Guide.
PART II.

Containing many rare Experiments relating to Horſes and Horſemanſhip, &c. in ſuch Exactneſs and Variety as has not hitherto been made publick to the World.

The manner of Breaking a Horſe the beſt way, and Perfecting him in his Paces, &c. *and preſerving him from Danger,* &c.

HAving thus far advanced in this great Undertaking, as I well hope with ſucceſs, I now think it highly neceſſary, for the better Encouragement of the Reader, to add ſuch rare Secrets, and other Matters, as I doubt not but will confirm him in the ſincere endeavour of uſe to render him in the Practice both Profit and Pleaſure.

Having back'd your Horſe in the latter end of the fourth, or beginning of the fifth year, and by gentle means rendred him eaſie and compliable, which by raring, beating, and haring, cannot be ſo well brought to perfection, as by cheriſhing and encouraging him; though ſometimes it muſt be with-

with gentle correction, that he may be the better brought to understand himself. Then the next thing materially to be considered, is to what use you design him, that to the same end you may reduce him to pace, amble, trot, gallop, or the like, as either of them may best concur to his advantage. Wherefore, that none might plead ignorance herein, I shall treat of them in their order briefly and effectually.

When you mount a Horse with the intention before-mentioned, you must, if he be an unmanaged Horse, observe chiefly the correction or encouragement of the Voice, Bridle, Switch, Spur, Calves of the Legs, Stirrops, and the Ground; all of these being properly used in the true Management of a Horse; but being to be observed, as the discreet Rider shall see occasion for the best advantage, it would be impossible for me to set down Directions of this kind; though in general I must say, that they must be done with discretion, and in season; or else instead of redounding to the facilitating of Management, they may turn to its disadvantage in rendring the Horse restiff, or hardning him in the Vice of going backward. And now as the true Amble is the justest measure a Horse can take to ground him in, and render him sensible of all other motions, I proceed in the first place to give Directions how, and by what means he must be brought to undertake it with ease and chearfulness, for if the contrary happen, he will hardly be brought to the perfection you wish.

Observe when your Horse is well broke, that he will patiently endure the Bitt and the Rider; that you take him into plough'd land, not too deep nor cloggy, by reason of Clay or lying low; nor must it be done in wet weather, nor suddenly after a shower; and there rack him a good going pace, till he begins to be a little warm, and feels his legs well: And so do often morning and evening, straining and forcing him ever now and then beyond that pace, when as you will in a short time perceive him to fall into a kind of an Amble, but so shuffling, that it is not fit for him long to continue it in this manner, least by custom it becomes habitual; though in ancient times this was the way both held and practiced, whereby the Horses were brought to the motion of Ambling: But since Time and Experience has furnished

niſhed us with better, it would be ingratitude not to imbrace them; and therefore, for Brevity-ſake, paſſing over the various Diſcourſes and Opinions of ſome that hold it beſt for a Horſe to fall out of a Gallop into an Amble; of others that would oblige him to it by loading him with exceſſive weights; and ſome again, and thoſe not a few, that would have him brought to it by hand between two rails; others there are, and they more erronious than any I have named, who would have the Horſe loaded with ſhooes of extraordinary weight to force him thereto, which by often uſing he muſt conſequently be diſabled to perform any motion as he ought: And indeed Opinions in this caſe are ſo many and various, that it would be endleſs in a manner to trace them; many of which, though gilded with ſeeming poſſibility, I willingly omit, and proceed to that which my Experience tells me cannot fail, if rightly managed: Directions in performance of which, take as followeth:

Having trained your Horſe, by the help of the plough'd land, or other gentle means, upon a conſiderable Rack-pace, to fall into an Amble, though he preſently leave it again, and fall to any other motion: Then take ſtrong new Lines made of Hemp or Flax, about the thickneſs of a Jack-line, well ſhrunk and dried, that they may neither reach nor ſhrink in uſing; let them have Nooſes wrought in them at either end of theſe Lines; there muſt be two in number of ſo even a length, that the leaſt diſproportion imaginable muſt not be found in them, their lengths not by any means exceeding thirty ſeven inches, or being under thirty five; this done, make a ſoft pare of Hoſe or Shackles of Girthweb, lined for that purpoſe, with Wool, Cotton, or ſoft Linnen; faſten them about the Fetlock-places of the fore and hinder Legs, or places in which Horſes are croſs-barred to prevent their leaping, and faſten them by Aglet-holes with Leather-tabs of equal length, and let the end of a Tab ſo faſtned come from them about the length of eight or nine inches, punched full of holes, to receive the tongue of a Buckle fit for each of them; then having buckled on your Cords even on both ſides, to the diſtance, or as I may term it, the reach of the Horſe, when he ſtands even with his feet, and proportionably upright, ſo that by no means they may ſlip or reach:

then

then take Girthweb, as much as will reach over his back, and come down to reach the Cords, on both sides, exactly in the middle, wrap it round the Cords, but so as it may not strain or lift them up, nor suffer them to sink lower than their just evenness; and then fasten them either by running a Tag through Aglet-holes made for the same purpose, or by Pack-thread with a Pack-needle; and this is called a Tramel; being one of the best and exactest for this purpose that can be made.

Your Horse being accouter'd in the manner before-mentioned, on a plain firm ground, not over-stony, move him at first gently, that he may have an opportunity to feel the Tramel, the better to avoid twitching; and so by degrees let him fall into his Amble by moderate managing the Bridle, and holding your Switch between his Ears that he wreth nor wry not his Neck, cherishing him with your Voice, and giving him, when he has done well, some pleasant morsel; but by no means put him to it beyond his ability, least it become tedious to him, and create in him an irksomeness and dislike; and in so using him several days, that is, every other day in the week; if your Horse be sure and good footed, he will take pleasure in it, and perform it without your forcing him to it. But by the way observe, that if your Horse be of a long reach, and when he first undertakes it is consequently subject to twitches, then you may without offence, when he is first put to it, give him a little more liberty, least you subject him to those twitches by sometimes forgetting himself when the Tramel is off, which by the Ignorant, will be taken for the String-halt; but being well used and brought to the feeling of them, you must come to a perfect length, least having more liberty at one time than at another, he proves a shuffler, or varies in his Amble.

Having brought your Horse pretty well to Amble by the Tramel, insomuch that he does it not confusedly, or against his will, either by hand or backing, you may take him into uneven ground, and try him in such ways as you imagine you may have occasion to ride him in, never standing to pick or chuse your ground, but ride him as far as is safe, according as your fancy leads you, yet not without the Tramel fixed on one side, which you may shift as you see occasion; and when

when you find him perfect, you may ride him without, only carry the Tramel with you, in caſe he make a default; the beſt way is to bring him back to that default, and make him ſenſible that he has committed an error, which can be no better done than by demonſtration; and ſo often uſing him, the time will come, and that within three months at fartheſt, that he will be perfect in his Exerciſe.

There is to be conſidered next to what has been ſpoken, the Trot, and that conſiſts in two Parts, *viz.* the lofty and ſwift Trot; and although to the latter a good Amble is naturally given, yet the former requires deliberation and judgment. And ſince Experience has afforded a Rule, I think not convenient to conceal it; which, as the beſt Experiment, I deliver as followeth:

In this caſe a Horſe uſed to the great Saddle, is the fittingeſt to be undertaken, one you deſign for that or the like purpoſe. Wherefore having choſen your Horſe, faſten on him the War-Saddle, girting it indifferently ſtrait; then put on a Curb-bridle and faſtning to the Chain thereof a Leather-ſtrap, bring it by a Buckle to bear on the Breaſt-plate or Girths under the Horſe's Legs, or which of them you ſhall perceive moſt convenient, till you bring the Neck of the Horſe to bend or bear Ach-wiſe like the neck of a Swain: which done, mount your Horſe, and move him a Racking-pace till you find him begin to take up his Legs round and clever, moving his Knees in a manner to his Breaſt, or bringing the upper and lower ſpaces between the Joynts to an equal bearing; and ſo continue to exerciſe him till you find him move in that manner according to your expectation; and then you may try him without the Straps, and by that means perfect him as you ſee occaſion. Now ſome there are, that upon the firſt Backing uſe to clog their Horſes with broad and heavy Shooes; but theſe I diſapprove, and chiefly for two Reaſons:

Firſt, Becauſe they greatly endamage the Hoof, and not ſo only, but by their weight ſtrain and diſorder the Sinews, that a Horſe muſt of neceſſity be obliged to take up his Legs with pain, which will afterwad ſubject him to ſtiffneſs and ſtumbling.

Secondly, They will endanger the Sinews by bruſing and cutting,

UMI - 1994

cutting, and thereby cauſe the Bone-ſpavin, Screw-pin, Ring-bone or Quitter-bone; all which, for the moſt part, proceed from the like ill Management, and defect of judgement in Managing, *&c.* But if you would perfect him to the great Saddle, conſider farther, that it is highly neceſſary to manage him at the Ring, that he may be capable of ſtopping and turning upon the leaſt motion; and this Ring muſt be upon ſoft ſandy ground, where having gently circled him till you have trod out a Ring between fifty and ſixty Paces in compaſs, oblige him to trace it, reſting him on the right, and cheriſhing him on the left, ſtopping him likewiſe upon the latter, as you ſee occaſion, ſometimes in the midſt of the Circle, and at other times where he began, ſhifting likewiſe, as you ſee convenient, your hand, and mending your pace, obliging him upon a full ſtop to retire a pace or two backward; and ſo from a Trot to a Gallop, ever obſerving, that Galloping to the right, he leads with his left Foot, and ſo conſequently Galloping to the left, that he leads with the right, and in ſo doing he will perform it with eaſe and delight; when, on the contrary, if he carries both his Feet even, leading with neither, he muſt do it with pain, and be apt ſometimes to ſtrike; and this is beſt in caſe of a full ſpeed upon a ſtrait Courſe, and in ſo uſing convenient Bitts and furniture, and keeping a ſteady hand, you may ſtop him upon a full Career, and oblige him ſuddenly to retire, if any imminent Danger be apparent, or ſometimes for your own pleaſure; and by ſuch like Management you may bring him to the Turnings and ſtrait Turns with little difficulty, and indeed perfect him for any conſiderabl Exerciſe; in the performance of which, he ought likewiſe to be conſidered more than what I have formerly mentioned.

When you intend your Horſe for Travel, Sport, or the like, more than what I have already given directions as to Managing, that he may well endure, and anſwer your expectation, obſerve to dreſs him over night in the ſame manner as has been directed for the Running-horſe; and having by you Dogs-greaſe or Neats-foot-oil, anoint him therewith, eſpecially his Joynts, ſuppling it in with your warm Hands, or a warm cloth; and in ſo comforting the Nerves and Sinews, you will oblige the Horſe to hold out much

better;

better; and in the morning give him three quarts of well sifted Oats, sweet and good, with a quart of Beans split, and the husks taken off, and after them a quart of Ale: and so being accoutered to your mind, ride him forth a Racing-pace, till you find his Joynts very plyable, which will be within a Mile or two riding; then mend his pace, and by degrees put him to either Amble, Trot or Gallop, as best shall please you till you come to your Inn.

Being come to the end of your Stage, if the Horse sweat take off his cloaths by degrees, and with a piece of broken Sword, Scithe, or edged Lath, scrape him all over, and after that rub him with dry wisps or woollen cloths; then pass your hand over him, clean his Pasterns and Fetlocks from dirt and gravel, pick his Feet, and cast a cloth over him, and give him his potion of Mear, which must be a third part more at least than what his usual allowance is when he stands still; and if you find him very hot within, you may give him Water and Ale a like quantity, both being a little warmed, especially in Winter-time, and anoint his Limbs with the same materials, and in the same manner I have before mentioned; and if you find his Breath short, give him an ounce of Hemp-seed well bruised in a glass of Canary or warm Ale, ever forbearing to wash your Horse when he is hot, that is, to ride him into a Pond, or the like; but rather if he be exceeding dirty, warm a pail full of Water, and with wisps rub him gently clean; or having first rubbed off the dirt with dry wisps, you may cleanse the rest with a Brush. And thus much I thought fit to lay down as a Supplement to what has been formerly spoken, not much different in the cases of Ordering and Management; and so proceed to Particulars and Generals of another nature, tho' tending to the same centre.

CHAP.

UMI - 1994

CHAP. II.

How the Jockies make old Horſes look young; a lean Horſe artificially and naturally, how fatned by Jockies. A Remedy for Reſtiffneſs, Neighing, and the Vice of Lying down in the Water, the Art of making Stars, Snips, Blazes, ſetting on falſe Ears, Tails, Manes, &c. with a diſcovery of many other Secrets.

To make a Horſe that is really old, ſeem young.

RUb his Teeth with a Pumice-ſtone, and the Powder of burnt Allom; which rendring them white, take a ſmall Iron, which being crook'd for the purpoſe, burn in the tops of the two formoſt Teeth ſmall holes, ſo big, that a Wheat corn may enter on each ſide of the neither Jaw; and on the Tuſhes do the like, fining them with a Bodkin till the black Scale come off, and the Teeth in that place look brighter than in another: which done, if the pits above the Eyes be hollow, with a ſharp Pen-knife or Lancet ſlit the ſkin, being before raiſed, and hollowing it as much as you can by working of your fingers, put into the ſlit a Duck or Crow-quill, and blow them up one after another, that the hollowneſs my fill with wind; which entering into the Cavities of the ſkin, will after having been ſtopped up for a time with a Plaiſter of *Diaculum* or Bees-wax fix there, till by ſweat or extraordinary labour it works out: If the Temples are crooked with a ſign of Age, lay to either of them a Poultis of Hemlock and Camomoil fryed in Linſeed-oil; and it will ſo far contract the blood to fill them, that for many days they will appear ſtrait: And then for the Hoof which in caſe of Age will be ſeamed or rugged, take a Raſp or File, and having well ſmoothed it, anoint it well with Oil of Turpintine for a day or two, and it will look very comely; but in this caſe the Horſe muſt be diſpoſed of within a week at the fartheſt, or elſe the defects will remain.

A

A Horſe ſubject to lye down in the Water, how to remedy it.

In this caſe you muſt conſider the Horſe to be of a hot conſtitution, begotten or produced under the fiery Signs of *Leo* and *Scorpio*, or elſe much overflowed with Choler, and therefore ever deſirous to cool himſelf, and thereby rendred in a manner unſerviceable: which Vice to remedy, Ride him into a Water up to his Knees and ſuffer him to lye down; then having three or four luſty Fellows ready with Boots on, let them ſeize his Head, and hold it under Water whilſt another beats and belabours him; and this do till you find the Horſe almoſt ſtifled; and in repeating it three or four times, the terror of it will ſo work, that the Horſe will fly from the Water more than ever he coveted it, and hardly ſuffer himſelf to be watered, unleſs in a Pail or Trough. This likewiſe may be remedied by Bleeding and Purging your Horſe Spring and Fall, whereby the Humours that occaſion the extraordinary heat and diſorder may not be wanting whereon to feed or contract, having the power and force of inflaming his Body, *&c.*

A Tired or Reſtiff Horſe, to remedy.

For the firſt of theſe, being ſubject to Tire without any extraordinary cauſe, ſtamp a handful of Nettles, and pour the Juyce into either of his Ears; and then take a couple of ſmall peeble-ſtones, and put in after it, tying or ſewing up the Ears, as advantagiouſly a may be, and with keen Nettles rub his Fundament; laying Hemlock or Ars-ſmart, called by many Hounds-tongue, under his Saddle, next to his Back.

If a Horſe be Reſtiff, and refuſes to go, but will run on one ſide and go backward, cramp his Stones with a Cord, and bring it up between his fore-legs, giving him a twitch when you perceive him froward, and it will oblige him to advance, eſpecially if you keep his Reins even with a ſteady hand; but if a Mare or Gelding, which yields no ſuch advantage, be troubled with any ſuch Vice, you muſt have a Crupper with a Braſs or Iron-plate faſtned a little above the Tail, through which may come two or more ſharp points, like Needles, at ſuch a time as the Crupper is moved or ſtrained; and then when you find your Beaſt practice the Vice, ſtrain the Crupper with your hand, and it will enter the

fleſh,

UMI - 1994

fleſh, and force the Beaſt to leap forward. This Vice generally comes by a Horſes not being backed in time, or through the ill management of the Breaker or Rider.

To prevent the troubleſomeneſs of a Horſe's Neighing, which may prove diſadvantagious to the Maſter, eſpecially in time of War.

Take a long ſlip of red Cloth, dip it in the Oil of Linſeed, and ſtrew on it the Powder of Elecampane-roots, and on that burnt Allom; faſten it round the Horſe's Tongue as near to the Root as may be; and ſo long as it there remains, you may ſecure yourſelf, your Horſe can make no noiſe. And this Art *Darius* the Great *Perſian* King, was ſaid to uſe to the Horſes of his Competiors for the Kingdom, by Bribing their Grooms, when the Election depended upon the Neighing of the firſt Horſe.

If a Horſe be dull, and will not feel the Spur without much wounding, take the following Directions to make him go very nimble with or without a Spur.

Scrape off the Hair in the ſpuring-places on either ſide, lay a Plaiſter of Roſin and Bees-wax to ſoften the ſkin, then prick it full of holes, ſo that they may juſt paſs through it; which done, take Allom and Copras and rub therein: or you may do it with Powder of Glaſs beaten very fine, and theſe entering the holes, will by a little feſtring, cauſe ſuch a ſoreneſs, that he will run forward upon the laſt touch with your heel; which having a while uſed him to, you may heal the Sore with Hogs-greaſe, Bees-wax and Olive-oil made into an Ointment, with the Powder of Aloes.

To make a lean Horſe artificially fat, or to ſeem ſo to the Buyer.

Take a Horſe lean, but not extraordinary old, rub and comb him well, put him into a warm Stable: Then,

Take a pound of Anniſeeds, the like of the Powder of Liquoriſh, half a pound of the Flower of Brimſtone, and half a pound of Dates ſtoned, with ſix ounces of the Powder of Elecampane-roots; bruiſe them well together till they may be reduced to what fineneſs you think convenint, then with a peck of fine Flower, two quarts of Milk, and the Yolks of a dozen Eggs, make them up into Balls as big as Pullet's Eggs, give him four of theſe in a morning, and after them a quart of new Wort, then give him half a peck of Oats, and after

after that a Mash made of Bran, boiled Barley and Lupins; giving him, in all circumstances, the like in the Evening, blowing up his Flanks, and the hollowness of his Eyes, with Quills, suffering him to drink but very little, and so in a Week or ten Days he will look very plump and fair to the eye; but, being afterward neglected, or kept at hard Meat, the spungy kind of Flesh or Fat so gotten, will suddenly fall away, and leave perhaps the unskilful Buyer possessed with an opinion, that the Horse is bewitched.

To make a lean Horse really fat, the best and cheapest way.

In this case, as in many other, People are generally wedded to their Opinions; but Experience being the best Master, I shall deliver therefore what has been faithfully proved and found effectual: And so, to bring your expectation to a period,

Take your Horse from Grass or Soil; and, if the Season admit, Blood and Purge him gently, and so the Crudities, that hinder the kindly operation of the Nutriment may be removed: which done, rub and loosen his Skin, and wash him all over with the Decoction of Hyssop, Savin, Rue and Fumitory; which will not only cleanse him from Scurf, and other contracted Filth, but render him a kindly heat and breathing: Then give him each Morning, before his hard Meat, a Ball as big as a Tennis-ball, or such a one as he can conveniently swallow, made of Honey, Rye-flower, the Powder of Licorish, burnt Allom-powder, and the Powder of Harts-horn: And, after his hard Meat, which must be given in due proportion, Water wherein Dandelyon-roots, Rosemary and Fennel have been concocted, and in it Bran or Flower dusted; and let his hard Meat be Oats, Splent-beans and sweet Hay, airing him Morning and Evening, and accommodating him with fresh Litter and good Dressing; by which means, in a Month, he will be fat and lusty, have sound and solid Flesh, and be fitting for any Company.

To make the Hair of a Horse, that stands rough and staring, smooth and sleek.

If you would have your Horse smooth and handsome, so that your self and others may take delight in him,

UMI - 1994

Take a French Brush and rub his Hair the contrary way, fetching out by that means the Dirt and Scurf; so that the Horse being freed there-from, the Hair may lye closer and smoother; then draw your Brush and Curry-comb the right way, and having laid the Hair as smooth as it will be; then, if the Weather be seasonable, let him Blood in the Neck-veins; and after that pass over him with your Hand, or a Cloth dipped in Oyl of Bays, and, at convenient times, wash him with the Decoction of Camomil, and keep him well dressed, and at good diet.

To make Hair come where it is thin, or take it away where it is thick.

The Hair being thin, which is uncomely in a Horse, Take the Ashes of Fern four ounces, the Oyntment of Marshmallows two ounces, a dram of the Oyl of *Petrolum*, and an ounce of the Powder of Bithwort-roots: wash or anoint the place with them, mixed with a like quantity of Oyl and Wine, adding thereto an ounce of the Honey of Roses; and continue so to do for a Month together: Or, for want of these, you may wash the Horse with a Lye made of the Ashes of Pease-straw, wherein the green Husks of Walnuts and Red Sage have been concocted.

To take off Hair, Take Soot of Wood two ounces, Oyl of Tartar two drams, the Calcine of Egg-shells half an ounce, with an ounce of unslaked Lime: make them into a Plaister with Oyl of Spike, and apply it to the place you design to have bare or thinner; the Hair at that time being close clipped.

Stars, Blazes, Snips, what they are, and how to make them for Ornament or Disguise in any part of the Horse where it may be conveniently situate.

These are held, by the Curious, to be great Ornaments to Horses; and therefore many have studied how to make them, and left sundry Directions, as their Opinions, how they ought to be made. But since they vary, and many of them upon tryal have proved frivolous and ineffectual; therefore I shall only give the approved manner and method of making things of this kind:

First then, If you would have a white Star in a Horse of a different colour, take up the Skin, where you endeavour

your to situate it, with a Bodkin or fine Lancet, round about, or as you design the Mark; and making a piece of Lead, or divers pieces, the better to get them into the hole, that you within side the hollowed Skin may be framed to the proportion, dipping those pieces in Oyl of Spike or Turpentine; by which means the Skin being separated from the Flesh, and receiving no manner of alumentary moisture, will shed the Hair: which when you perceive, take out the Lead, and clap it close to the Flesh, having anointed the Wound with Honey of Roses, and the next Hair that comes will be of a perfect white. Now there are those that take up the Skin by running two Pins or Bodkins cross-ways, and binding them over with a Packthread, till the Skin be drawn up like a Purse, that so the Skin may mortifie: but I hold the first the best.

To make a Black Star, Blaze, or Snip, in a White Horse.

Take of Souters Ink half an ounce, four scruples of Oliander-wood beaten to Powder, the Juyce of Hemlock half an ounce, Oyl of Ebony two drams, and Vitriol two drams: often with these, well incorporated, anoint the designed place. Or, for want of these, Take Galls, the Rust of Iron, Oyl of Tartar, and the Ashes of Fern-roots, of each a like quantity: bruise them well together, and apply them Plaister-wise till the Hair sheads; and then observe the next that comes will be black.

If you are desirous of a *Red Star*, then take *Aqua vitæ* and *Aqua fortis*, of each an equal quantity; adding two penny weight of Quick-silver: incorporate them as well as may be with two drams of Tartar, and as much of the Flower of Brimstone; and by anointing the place designed therewith, the Hair will become Red, but will continue no longer so than till the casting off the Coat, at what time you may in like manner renew it.

As for Blazes and Snips, the one is made generally on the middle of the Forehead descending, and the other on the Muzzle, between the two Nostrils, or somewhat higher; and may be made by the means aforesaid, in what manner and form you shall think convenient, to imitate those that are natural ones: and so you may change Saddle-spots. And seeing those that commonly pass for Stars are

UMI - 1994

only round Spots, I have thought fit to give further Directions on this occaſion.

If you intend to make an extraordinary Adornment in the Front of your Horſe, you may make a Star, as the form in the Margin, by ſhaping fine, flat, though taper, pieces of Lead, ſo that the points extending every way under the Skin, when gently raiſed, the baſis, or broad ends may meet in a centre juſt in the middle of the Forehead; the Lead being anointed with Oyl of Spike or Tartar, and ſo ſuffer it to remain till the Hair is fallen away; and then, taking out the Lead, ſuffer it to cloſe, having well anointed the inſide with Deers-ſuet and Oyl of Roſes; and ſo continue to do till you perceive the Hair well cloſed, and the white Hair will come undoubtedly in the form of the Figure, which you may make leſſer or bigger at your diſcretion: And in this form you may make a black Star, according to the Directions for black Stars.

Some are of opinion, that a black, or any dark-coloured Horſe, may, for Ornament-ſake, have four white Feet, as they uſually are termed, made artificially; and they ſay it may be done by the Application of the following Cataplaſm, or rather Plaiſter, *viz.*

Take *Reſalgar* a dram in Powder, put to it a dram of the Oyl of Tartar or Vitriol, with an ounce of the Oyl of Harts-horn, and two ounces of the Juyce of the Roots of Lillies, as much of that of Celendine, made up to a thickneſs, with the Greaſe of a Hedge-hog or Urchin, applied Poultis or Plaiſter-wiſe: by which means, the Hair being taken up by the Roots, and the Fleſh for a time mortified, which may be reſtored by ſuppling Oyntments, the Hair will come again as white as Milk: Nor am I much different in opinion; but this being a thing rarely required, and ſeldom experienced, I leave it to be tried by thoſe that deſire it, and proceed to other matters: But by the way I ſhall ſay thus much, that if the Feet by the aforeſaid Experiment can be changed in Colour, then conſequent-

ly the Tail, Ears, or any other part of the Body, by the like application, may be the ſame.

To make a Blaze-Royal.

In this caſe, by reaſon of the intricacy, Lead being very difficult to frame, or at leaſt-ways to put into the ſkin, ſo that one part may touch, and the other not; for ſo it muſt do, or the Mark will be all of a colour, with a fine pair of Sciſſars cut the Figure in the Margin as near and exact as may be, to the ſkin; and having made a Lye of Urine and Soap-boylers Aſhes; thoſe which appear for the black Streaks in the Figure, and which you muſt only cut down, anoint; and ſo do three or four days, which will ſtay the Hair in the root; then take *Aqua fortis* half an ounce, Oil of Sulpher the like quantity; add to them two drams of the Powder of Crabs-claws calcined, and with it anoint the places with a ſmall Pencil for four or five days ſucceſſively, and the next hair that comes in a white Horſe will be inclining to black, and that in a black Horſe to white, and ſo in any coloured Horſe it will alter and change the colour proportionably. But if you would have this plain, it may be done with Lead, as the Star will make appear; and will not only prove an excellent Mark to know a Horſe by from others when at Graſs, or the like, but infallibly to deſcribe him by when loſt, that without much difficulty of charge he may be found.

The loſs of Ears, how to ſupply.

If your Horſe has loſt his Ears, and thereby becomes uncomely, you may ſupply them with thoſe of a dead Horſe, by ſewing and glewing them on ſo artificially, that the Horſe by moving the roots of his Ears, ſhall move them as if they were naturally his own. But as a farther myſtery, ſome have held, and indeed it bears the face of a poſſibility, that the ſtumps of the Ears being pared, ſo that being taken off to the Quick, as near the roots as may be, and the Ears of another Horſe new cut off, clapped on warm, and ſewed down whilſt the Blood iſſues from the ſtumps, they will by

being anointed with Oil of Juniper of Bays, by a kind of Inoculation graft themſelves to the ſtumps or roots, and become natural. And this they hold likewiſe may be done by Teeth, in putting a Tooth juſt drawn into the place from whence a ſtump is juſt drawn likewiſe. This alſo they hold may be done by the Tail of a Horſe; but not having been proved by me, I leave the Experiment to the diſcretion of the Reader.

Falſe Manes there are likewiſe to ſupply ſuch as fall off, and are not altogether improper, becauſe they ſerve for Ornament as well as the beſt, and theſe are taken off from dead Horſes ſkin and roots, and being tanned and dried, ſo that the Leather becomes plyable, and may be ſhaved ſo thin on the fleſhy ſide, that it will ſet cloſe to the live Horſe's Creſt, off from which the hair is ſhaved or taken by the roots, with Applications, it being firſt clapped on with Glew or Pitch, may be ſewed to the Horſe's ſkin, in ſuch a manner, that the hairs of the one, and the other riſing over the ſeams, it will hardly be diſcerned, eſpecially at a diſtance.

And thus have I laid down ſuch things as I thought convenient of this kind, not to deceive the Buyer; but to the end, that he knowing them, may not be deceived. And as a Caveat, bid him farther beware of logging a lame Horſe with Lead to make him go as if he was ſound; as alſo the Spring-ſaddle, which by the Rider's leaning forward pricks the Horſe ſo intollerably upon bearing between the Shoulders, that if he be never ſo dull, he will caper and jump as if it proceeded from his high mettle, which hidden cauſe frequently deceives the Unſkilful.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

How to ſet a Horſe off for Sale to the beſt advantage, by Trimming, Waſhing, &c. as alſo Directions for the Management of a Horſe in Hunting, relating to his Leaping, &c. with other things and matters worthy of note.

YOur Horſe being repleat with hair on the mane, tail, and ſometime, eſpecially if he be of the Dutch breed, on the legs or paſterns, ſo that thereby he appears rough and unſeemly to the eye; I ſay, if it ſo happen whereby ſometimes the unſkilful Buyer without a cauſe is diſcouraged, having your ſciſſers, razor, comb, bruſh and ſponge in a readineſs, as alſo your tweezers or curling-iron, comb well his foretop, mane and tail, and with your bruſh and comb ſettle his legs, if occaſion require it; then duſt him over, and do the like again after that, beginning at the foretop with your razor, ſhave away the ſhort briſtling hairs underneath it, that cauſe it by the means of their ſtubbornneſs to bruſtle and ſtand ſtaring; as likewiſe thoſe that grow unſightly about the roots of the ears: which done, divide the foretop into two equal parts, and then clip it with your ſciſſers aſlope between, and ſo turn it waving up in two diviſions with your tweezers, and faſten it with a ſkewer; and ſo do by his mane and tail, clipping off the ends of thoſe hairs that hang unſeemly, long, or out of order, ſo that in a ſhort time they will appear comely in waves or ringlets; and thus, although the mane falls two ways, you may reduce it to one ſide, *&c.* As for the legs, having clipp'd away the ſuperfluous hairs, ſmooth them down with Oyl of Bays as hot as may be endured; and in doing ſo two or three times, you will find the hair lye cloſe.

How to make a Ball, wherewith a Horſe being well lathered and ſmoothed down, ſhall look exceeding ſleek and comely.

Take of Cake-ſoap a pound, Fulling-earth four ounces, the Lye of Wood-aſhes a pint, and Almond-flower two ounces; boil them together over a gentle fire till they become

a gelled thickneſs, then ſuffering the maſs to cool, make it up by drying it in an Oven or Stove, into a Ball, and with it make a Waſh or Lather of new Wort, if it may be had, or elſe with warm Water, and lather him over with it, being before well bruſhed down, and ſo ſuffer him to ſtand till the frothy part ſink of itſelf; and then with your hand dipped in Water wherein Gum-araback has been diſſolved, paſs over his body, and after that with a fine Woollen-cloth, and then with your hand again till he be dry; and he will appear wonderful ſleek many days.

How to manage a Horſe in Leaping, taking a Hedge, Gate, Stile, or Ditch, &c.

Many have held this a difficult piece of Horſemanſhip, as indeed it is; for by ill management in this affair either the Horſe or Man has been often ſpoiled, and ſometimes both of them together; and ſuch accidents fall out through the careleſſneſs of the Rider, or ill management of the Horſe: Wherefore, to remedy it and prevent danger, let the Rider obſerve, that he not only ſit faſt himſelf upon the motion of riſe, but that bearing ſomewhat forward to give the Horſe the more way, he keep the reins even and ſteady on either hand; but not too hard, leſt the Horſe riſing too high, may happen to over-ſet, or loſe by ſuch a motion the force of the ſpring of his hinder Legs, and by that means be rendered leſs able to cant his body, or draw them nimbly after him, which frequently occaſions a ſtrain or ſlip, eſpecially at a Ditch. And the beſt way on this occaſion to hold your Rod or Whip, is either between his ears, or ſomewhere out of ſight, leſt it cauſe him to boggle, by inclining more to the one hand than to the other; or for fear of being corrected, force himſelf beyond his reach. As for your Legs, you ought to keep them moderately cloſe to his ſides, but not ſo cloſe as to preſs his ribs, for that will oblige him to bate of his ſtrength.

At a Gate or Stile ever obſerve your diſtance before you ſuffer your Horſe to take it, which ought to be ſomewhat more than a Man's pace from it, leſt by the over-reaching of the fore-legs the hinder-legs either ſtrike or ſtick in the bars, which through the ſudden motion occaſions an extraordinary bruiſe, if not the leg to ſnap ſhort off.

As

As for a Ditch, rather chuſe to leap againſt a moderate riſing Bank, then upon a deſcent or low place, becauſe in doing the latter the Horſe comes down with ſo great a force, that he will be either apt to ſtumble on his Noſe, if not well ſupported by a ſteady hand, or elſe to ſprain or ſlip his Shoulder.

As for the Hedge-leaping, the greateſt care required is to ſhun the Stakes, and the like to be done by the ſharp ends of Pails, leſt the Horſe by an Over-reach gore himſelf; and in this caſe conſider both the Bank and the Ditch, if any there be, leſt you force your Horſe upon a thing too hard for him, and by that means be both together left in the mire, or in a worſer condition. Nor is it convenient in Hunting to ride a Horſe in places where theſe things are required, unleſs he be managed at leaſure before-hand; for being upon full-ſpeed, your Horſe ſeeing others who are managed, undertake theſe matters of difficulty, and thereby prompted to imitate them, will in ſpite perhaps of your utmoſt endeavour to the contrary, reſolutely attempt to follow them; for indeed no Creature deſires more to Emulate his like than a generous Horſe; nor, according to his underſtanding, is more proud of winning praiſe and applauſe: for, as the Poet has it,

When to the Barrs the ſoaming Steeds are lead,
They Prancing, ſeem to ſcorn the Ground they tread;
And when the Signal's given, either flies
Like Lightning, emulous to gain the Prize;
Whilſt with their thundring Hoofs the Earth does ſhake,
As when the ſtraggling Winds a War within it make:
Nor leſs, when loud the bloody Blaſt it ſounds,
Do they refrain o're Spears, o're Death and Wounds,
Through Smoak and Flame, and every dire Attack,
To ruſh, by the enraged Warriours Back'd,
And face the boldeſt things that they dare act;
Nay, in the noble Strife each one does preſs,
Where Danger may his Courage moſt expreſs,
To render each his Competitor leſs.
So that the Lawrel, Conquerers put on,
More by their Horſes than themſelves is won.

So Great Bucephalus *made it appear,*
Who Alexander *on his Back did bear*
About the World, ſcattering his Bloody War.

Nor have good Horſes been leſs famed and eſteemed in all Ages. But having thus paſſed over what I hope in this kind cannot be amiſs, but, on the contrary, prove profitable and neceſſary, I ſhall proceed to other Experiments, and things that may yet add to what has been ſaid, that no variety may be wanting in ſo neceſſary a Work, nor any thing material be omitted.

CHAP. IV.

What the Stable to keep a good Horſe in ought to be; and how he ought to be regarded; the Hoofs how to be corrected and mended in Shooing; and upon other occaſions.

AS for the Stable wherein a good Horſe ought to be kept, let it ever be paved with flat hard Stone, ſo well laid, that no wet can get in between to occaſion, by its long continuance, unwholeſome Airs; and let it be likewiſe laid ſlantwiſe ſhelving, or, as it is vulgarly called, down-hill, that ſo the Stale may run into a Channel, provided to carry it away; having a Covering of Canvaſs even with the Rack, to prevent the falling of Mortar amongſt the Horſe's Provender: or ſome are of the opinion to have it ceiled, if it be boarded over head, to prevent the Duſt or Hay-ſeeds and many other inconveniencies: but, above all, keep Swine and Poultry from coming into it, the Scent of the one, and the Dung of the other, being very offenſive. The Rack ought to be made of firm Oak, both the Bearings and the Staves, that the Horſe may have the leſs power to bite them, if he be ſo inclined; and the Managers be likewiſe made of firm Plank, well ſeaſoned and dried, having Pins or Wooden-pegs conveniently placed to hang the

the Bridles, Saddles, Girths, Cloths, Rubbers, Combs, Brushes, and the like Materials on; observing if conveniency will permit, to have a couple of Windows to open, one to the North, and the other to the South; opening the first in Summer, to let in the cool Air, as occasion requires; and the last in Sun-shiny days in the Winter, to let in the cherishing Heat, or fresh and gentle Gales, which will contribute to the vivacity of the Horse, and render him more sprightful; and ever give him for his Litter, Wheat or Rye-straw; but of these two, the former is the best; and if you perceive him subject also to eat his Litter, you must Muzzle him after that he has ended his Provender, lest he otherwise do contract an ill habit of body; ever giving him his Provender in due time, with convenient opportunity to take his rest at seasonable times: And if it so happen, as in many cases it is necessary, that you shooe him your self; or if done by another, in giving Directions to the best advantage, you may take the following Rules:

If it happen to be the hinder Feet you undertake, then consider the Toe is ever the tenderest part, and must be pared with a gentle hand, being left of a convenient thickness, that it may be capable of defending the Quick from Gravel, or being hurt by striking against hard Stones; suffering the Shooe likewise to be thicker at the Toe than in any other part; which Shooe must be set on even and clever, not inclining to one part more than another, which you must consider after your having pared the Hoof to an evenness, and struck a Nail on each side, not only by narrowly viewing it, but by suffering the Horse to set his foot on the ground; and if any unevenness happen that is not over-great, it may be remedied by striking the Hoof with the Hammer, without the trouble of drawing the Nails; both your Shooe and Nails being made of tough Iron, that they may in no wise be subject to break, and so in a Journey deceive your hope; the holes for the Nails being made mostly towards the Heels, because of the weakness of the Toe.

In case the Foot has a false Quarter, which looks in a manner like a piece put in, then must the Shooe have on that part

part a Button, or be a little more raiſed than the other on the inſide, a ſmall ſpace from the quarter nearer to the Toe, that thereby the ſtreſs may be taken off the quarter ſo defective, and ſo the Horſe rendred uncapable of limping.

If by reaſon of the ſwelling or ſtanding of the hoof inward the Horſe be apt to interfere, then muſt ſo much of it as is convenient be taken away with a Raſp; and in paring the outſide, ſuffer the inſide to be ſomewhat of the higheſt, that it may oblige the Horſe to tread a little outward: or if it cannot be ſo well done in paring the hoof, let it be in the thickneſs of the ſhooe on that ſide more than on the other, fixing the edges ſo cloſe to the hoof, that it may have no opportunity to cut or interfere; and in caſe the Horſe be hoof-bound, anoint his hoofs with Oyl of Turpentine, and ſtop his feet with new Cow-dung fryed in Olive-oyl and Hogs-lard, making him a ſhooe in the form of a Half-moon, that by its openneſs it may be no obſtruction to the encreaſe or ſtretching of the hoof. And this may ſuffice for the hinder-feet in caſe of any reaſonable hoof; from which I ſhall proceed to thoſe of the fore-feet:

In caſe the hoofs of the fore-feet be well placed and ſound, even, firm and tough, then any reaſonable ſhooe will ſerve the turn; yet in this caſe muſt it be pared, and kept from running to diſorder, and when you have occaſion to travel much in Winter, or in any wet ſeaſon, it will not be amiſs, to prevent its fretting and expanding, to ſeer the edges with a bar, or other piece of Iron, ſuffering the ſhooe to ſwell no more on the toe than heel, becauſe, in this caſe, the heel is the tenderest part, and muſt, the rather of the two, riſe higher than the toe; and if the Horſe be not ſubject to interfere, you may ſuffer the ſhooe, for the preſervation of the hoof, to ſtand a ſtraw's breadth beyond it, even every way; nailing it on in ſuch wiſe, that the points of the nails may ſtand in an even round, and ſeem upon their ringing off and clenching to ſink ſomewhat into the hoof; ever obſerving to keep gravel from under the ſhooes. Now there are divers ſorts of unnatural and offenſive hoofs, hapning through neglect and accident, ſome of them that will never bear a ſhooe well, and others that cannot be brought to it without much pain and induſtry; and the principal of theſe are.

The

The rugged hoof, the brittle hoof, the narrow heels, the flat hoof, the broad ſruſh, and the crooked hoof; and to theſe, ſhoes muſt be purpoſely made and fitted, and the paring be ſhaped accordingly: the Particulars of which being uncertain or at leaſt too tedious for this Diſcourſe, I refer them to the Skilful Farrier, whoſe proper buſineſs is to order and reduce them, ſo as they may become practicable and uſeful.

If the hoof be damaged by reaſon of any nail that lurks therein, not eaſily to be found, it muſt by all means be looked after, and taken thence; and the place of its abode or lodgement may be found by ſundry means and ways, but chiefly by the heat of that place more than any other, or by the Horſe's ſhrinking up his foot.

The place being found, pull off the ſhoe, and open the foot gently with a Buttreſs or Drawing-knife; and if you can come at it, pull it out; if not, apply the plaiſter I have mentioned for drawing out thorns, ſtubs or ſplinters: or, for your more readineſs, thus:

Having in the beſt manner laid open the wound, Take of Stone-pitch, Tar, Turpentine and Bees-wax, of each an ounce, and half a quarter of a pint of the Juyce of Garlick; make them over a gentle fire into a Plaiſter, and apply them as hot as may be endured; and ſometimes it ſo happens, that by long continuance the Nail in working breaks out above the hoof; and in ſuch a caſe apply Honey, Burgundy-pitch, and the Powder of Burnt-allom, or a Poultis of Mallows, Camomil and Groundſel, fryed in Hogs-lard, and beaten up with the Whites of Eggs and Rye-meal, and applying it as hot as may be endured; and in ſo often doing it will break the ſkin, ſo that the cauſe of the Grievance may be removed; but by the addition of half an ounce of Verdegreaſe it will bring away the corruption, and heal the wound.

Critical

UMI - 1994

Critical Days, and the Observations thereon.

AND now, since it may not be amiss to say something of the Critical Days, observed by many as to Health and Sickness, which relate not only to Humane Constitutions, but those of all Creatures, I shall here insert them.

These Days are accounted such wherein are manifested alterations in relation to Sickness or Health, Life or Death: And as for the Critick-day, it is ever principally to be observed after the beginning of the Sickness, as, the 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 17, 21, 29; in which days, so cursorily to be observed, no strong Medicines or Purgations ought to be given; nor is it convenient to let bloud, unless great necessity require it. And other days there are in which many learned Men hold, if Man or Beast fall sick, he shall hardly escape, and that not without much difficulty, which are noted to be these, *viz. January* 1st, 7th. *February* 3d, 4th. *March* 1st, 4th. *April* 8th, 10th. *May* 2d, 7th. *June* 10th, 15th. *July* 11th, 13th. *August* 2d, 21st. *September* 3d, 10th. *November* 3d, 5th. *December* 7th, 10th. And many add, that if any dangerous Disease happen on the 10th of *August*, 1st of *December*, or 6th of *April*, it will go very near to terminate in death. Now there are, on the contrary, other days held to be good days, and that if a Disease happen on them, there is great hopes of recovery; nay, there is great hopes of succeeding in taking a Journey, or any labour wherein Man or Beast is concerned; and these are held to be the 3d and 13th of *January*; the 5th and 28th of *February*; the 3d, 22d and 30th of *March*; the 5th, 22d and 29th of *April*; the 1th and 28th of *May*; the 3d and 8th of *June*; the 12th, 13th and 15th of *July*; the 12th of *August*; the 1st, 7th, 24th and 28th of *September*; the 4th and 15th of *October*; the 13th and 19th of *November*; the 23d and 26th of *December*. And these indeed by the Ancients, were held in wonderful esteem; they generally taking their measures thereby, as to what I have said in relation to them; nor are they to be neglected or slighted by Practitioners in Physical or Chyrurgical Matters, either in relation to Man or Beast; no, nor

in

in their undertaking, relating to labour, or the like, but have

Some further Conſiderations upon the Cauſe of Diſeaſes, and how to remove them, Phyſically diſcuſſed, &c.

The cauſe of a Diſeaſe proceeds principally from an effect againſt Nature, and happens either External or Internal; the External is that which is outwardly viſible, and conſiſts generally of what comes by ſtrokes, bruiſes, wrenches, ſcalps, ſhot, or any manner of wound: Thoſe Internal are occult, or hid within the body, and conſequently the leſs diſcernable, and are divided into an Antecedent and Conjunction: The Conjunction is that which is neareſt, and immediately cauſes the Diſeaſe, and is generally held to be the bloud which cauſes the flegm; nor is it reckoned the Antecedent doth actually cauſe the Diſeaſe, but procures matter, and ſtirs it up almoſt to the creating of a Diſeaſe; but between it and the Diſeaſe are ſome Cauſes placed, *viz.* abundance of humours and ill digeſtion; and therefore theſe things ought to be chiefly conſidered before any one abſolutely attempts to diſpel the diſeaſe, by reaſon diſeaſes are firſt cured by removing the Cauſe antecedent, and after that the Cauſe conjunct: And as for the External Diſeaſes, they ought to be known, becauſe they breed Diſeaſes Internal, and very much change the bloud, and with much diligence are therefore to be ſought out, that ſo the Practitioner may be brought to the perfect knowledge of Internal Diſeaſes; and theſe External Diſeaſes are not either to be avoided or amended, but neceſſarily penetrate the Body, as Air infected, Meat, Drink, Labour, Sleep, Watching or Wakefulneſs, Repletion and Evacuation, and ſome diſorders that happen, or to be avoided as unneceſſary; as Bruiſes, Strains, Slips, Wounds, Strangling, or the like.

As for the true cauſe of a Diſeaſe, it ſometimes proceeds from corrupt matter whereof they are generated: or when either the Sire and Dam is infected with any Diſeaſe, the corrupt quality of which coming into the Seminal Veſſels, and tranſmitting the like to the Creature generated, making it hereditary; and at other times it proceeds from bad uſage, bad feeding, heats, colds, and many more which I have named in the Firſt Part. And again, as I have here hinted

ted, Internal Diſeaſes may proceed from External Strokes, Bruiſes or the like. And thus much for Phyſical Obſervations of this kind; from whence I proceed to give an accurate Relation of the Spirits, by which the Frame of Life is ſupported; which take as followeth:

The Spirits, what they are, with their Office, &c.

The Spirit is the aerious and ſubtle Suſtance of a Body generated of the moſt pure and thin Bloud, and is the original Mover and Supporter of the Members, giving them power to perform their office, and is ſeated chiefly in the Brain and Heart, from whence it dilates itſelf by the means of the Nerves and Arteries into all parts of the Body, and is divided into three parts, *viz.* Animal, Vital and Natural; the Animal peculiarly claims the Brain for its ſeat, for there it is prepared and made, and from thence deſuſes itſelf by inſenſible ways to the Eyes, Ears, and the like.

The Vital Spirit is chiefly ſeated in the left Ventricle of the Heart, and has its paſſages through the Arteries, being made of the evaporation or ſweet-breathing of the pureſt bloud, and is furniſhed with matter to rarifie it from the Air that is drawn in by the Lungs, and by its motion thro' the frame of the Body is the conſervation of natural heat.

The Natural Spirit is ingendred in the Liver and Veins, and is wonderfully inſtrumental in the concoction of the nutriment, and turning it into bloud, and then is farther imployed in diſtributing it through the Veins that branch from the *Vena-cava*, into every part of the Body. And if any of theſe are waſted or expulſed from its proper ſeat, unleſs it ſpeedily return, there is no hopes of life: And ſo in caſe of Famiſhing, *viz.* when the nutriment in the ſtomach is ſpent, then Nature preys upon the Bloud, and after that upon the Humour; and laſtly, upon the Vital Spirits; at what time the Body, though alive, is paſt recovery.

A further Deſcription of the External Parts, &c.

And now, the better to deſcribe, or at leaſt make the Reader more ſenſible of the Chyrurgical Part of this Book, I proceed to give a brief Relation of the material Parts of a Horſe's Body: As,

1. The Members are Bodies, ingendred of the firſt commixion

mixion of the Elements, Humours and Spirits, becauſe they are found to conſiſt of a ſolid, fleſhy and ſpirituous Subſtance; and theſe are diſtinguiſhed by, or divided into eight principal Parts, as Bones, Sinews, Ligaments, Tendons, Fibres, Membranes, and ſimple Fleſh and Skin; to which may be joyned Veins, Fat, Marrow, Arteries, Hair, Hoofs, and the like. Now to come nearer the purpoſe, a Bone is of ſubſtance earthly, dry and hard, the better to ſupport the frame of the Body, and is itſelf nouriſhed thro' little Pores, by the pureſt fat, converted through heat into Marrow. A Griſtle is likewiſe termed a ſoft and pliable Bone, the better to ſtrengthen and move the Members. A Ligament is a tough and more pliable kind of a Griſtle, holding or bending the Bones together. A Tendon is the end and tail of the Arbitrary Muſcles by which the Members are more eaſily moved. A Fibre is a ſmall Thread, firm and ſtrong, which Nature places in the Muſcles to create a right motion, or a motion every way; for as the right Fibres draw forward, the tranſverſe put back, and the oblique hold faſt. A Membrane and a Coat differ only in this, *viz.* A Membrane is the name of a Subſtance, and the Coat the name of an Office; for where a Membrane inveſts any part, it is called a Coat. As for the Skin, it is generally called the great Membrane, covering the whole Body, and over-caſting the frame or ſtructure thereof, and is made ſpongy or porous, the better to purge out the excremental Moiſture by ſwear. As for the Fleſh and Fat encreaſed by nouriſhment, it is raiſed and produced from and by the pureſt ſort of Bloud and Nutriment: And when between all theſe there is a concordance and agreement, then is there a cheerfulneſs in the Spirits, and a harmony throughout the frame of Nature.

As for the Materials you ought to furniſh yourſelf withal, for the performance of the ſundry Cures I have mentioned, if you are unſkilful in knowing them, or any of them: As for the Herbs and Roots, a Herbal will direct you; and for the Minerals, Gums, Seeds, Barks, Oils, and the like, you may conſult ſome Druggeſt; for ſhould I go about to deſcribe them particularly, they would take up a large Volume; and when that was done, you not perhaps much the wiſer,

UMI - 1994

wiſer, unleſs the Portraictures were likewiſe diſplayed: Wherefore let it ſuffice that I have ſpoken intelligibly of all things which I conceived neceſſary or dependant on this Subject; and have, according to my promiſe, expoſed to your view, and left you to your conſideration ſundry rare Receipts and Experiments, never before in Print; and ſuch as, I doubt not, will be Approved by thoſe that vouchſafe to try them, and turn not only to their Pleaſure, but Advantage, and be a means to preſerve this generous Creature in the ſtate of health and ſtrength, and render him tractable and obedient to his Owner: and in ſuch hopes I remain further to ſerve you, as opportunity or occaſion will admit.

A

TREATISE,

Shewing the

Diſeaſes and Cures

IN

CATTLE.

PART III.

SEeing theſe Creatures are very uſeful and profitable to Mankind, it is altogether neceſſary to preſcribe ſuch Things as are neceſſary for their Improvement and Preſervation: As for the Breeding and Managing there are few ignorant, whoſe Affairs lead them this way; therefore the Diſeaſes incident to them are here more properly as an Appendix to the foregoing Work, which by this time we hope has given ſufficient ſatisfaction.

How to know if a Beaſt be ſound or not, as alſo to know if an Ox or a Cow be ſound or whole of Body.

Go to your Beaſts in a morning, which are in the Houſe before they have meat or drink, and behold the tops of their Noſes; if there be ſtanding Pearls, like drops of dew-water, they are then ſound of Body; but if they be dry on the top of

of their Noſes, the Beaſts are not then in health. Gripe and pinch an Ox or Cow, with your hand, on the Back or Withers behind the Fore-ſhoulder; if they are ſound, they will not ſhrink; but if they be not ſound, they will then ſhrink with their Backs, and be ready to fall: This hath been often proved.

How to Fat an Ox.

Ye may quickly fat an Ox with Fetches, or Peaſe boiled with Barley, or Beans huſked and bruiſed: you may alſo fat an Ox well with Hay, but not to give him as you give unto a Horſe; if you give him in Summer of the tender Branches of Trees, it will refreſh him; if you give an Ox only Acorns they will make him ſcabby, except the Acorns are dryed and mixed with Bran and ſuch like. Alſo an Ox that you intend to make fat for ſale, you may labour him, in fair ſeaſons, once or twice a week, in gentle grounds, and work him now and then; a little Exerciſe will make him have a better ſtomach to his Meat; let him eat nothing but Barley and Hay, and ſometimes a few Herbs, or Vine Branches, or other tender Branches that he loveth, ſo you ſhall keep him in good order. Alſo to fat an Ox, you ſhould give him ground Beans, dryed Barley and Elm-leaves; but more eſpecially his going in the Sun doth make him like the better, and waſh him twice or thrice a week with warm water: alſo Coleworts boiled with Bran doth make their Bellies ſolable, and it nouriſheth as much as Barley; likewiſe Chaff mixed with Ground-beans is ſometimes good for them. Your Oxen are leſs ſubject to Diſeaſes then your Horſes, yet to preſerve and keep them in health, the moſt experienced Graſiers did uſe to purge them every Quarter three days together, one with Lupin-peaſe, the other with the Grain of Cyprus, beaten in the like quantity, ſteeped all one night before in a pint and a-half of Water, and ſo given; others give them things according to the uſe and cuſtom of their Country. Again, if an Ox do wax weak and feeble in labour, they do uſe to give them once a month of Fetches beaten and ſteeped in Water mixed with beaten Bran: and to keep an Ox from being weary, they do uſe now and then to rub his Horns with Turpentine,

tine, mixt with Olive-oyl; but let them take heed that they touch no other part of his Head, but his Horns, for if they do, it will hurt his ſight: alſo there will ſometimes a riſing come over the heart of an Ox, ſhewing thereby as though he would vomit; to help the ſame, you ſhould rub and chafe his muzzle and mouth with bruiſed Garlick, or elſe with bruiſed Leeks, and then force him to ſwallow them down.

An order or courſe how to Fat Oxen in the Stall.

Whenſoever you intend to fat Oxen in the Stall, being in ſummer or winter, to ſet them up: if you take them from Graſs in ſummer, they will hardly fall to eating of Hay of a good while after; but when that you ſhall take them up, keep them without Meat and Water one day and a night, ſo that they may be ſo extreamly hungry as to forget the Graſs; at the firſt give them a little Hay at once, that they may eat it up clean, and thereby grow ſtill more hungry. On a dry day take them up into a Stall; for if you ſtall them wet, they will have (as ſome Graſiers ſay) Warnel-Worms on their Backs, which will make them louſie, therefore you muſt uſe to comb them with a Wool-card or Horſe-comb, for that makes them lightſomer and luſtier. But ſome write that 'tis good for the labouring Ox ſo to be uſed, but not for the fatning Ox, nor ſhould you let them go forth of the Stall at any time, not ſo much as to drink; for then they will deſire the more to be abroad, and the licking of one another will hinder (as they ſay) their fatning. But you ſhall ſo provide that they may have the Water brought them in Cowls, or elſe come through the Stalls, as ſome do uſe, which is ſet in a wooden Trough along thro' their Stalls, and with a Pipe of lead, and a Cock at the end thereof, coming from a Conduit or Cyſtern, the ſaid Trough is filled twice a day with freſh Water, morning and evening, and at every time before to cleanſe the Trough of all the old Water, and ſo to give them freſh, for Oxen and Kine are Beaſts that love to feed ſweet and cleanly; alſo you ſhould lay your Trough ſomewhat aſlope, ſo that the Water may run all forth at the end thereof, in taking forth a Pin to let out the ſaid Water, and then waſh the Trough clean,

MI - 1994

clean, and ſo give them freſh: thus you may uſe them morning and evening as long as you fat them. And firſt in the morning, you ſhall take away all the old Hay, and ſo cleanſe their Water-trough, and then give them freſh Water, and then a little freſh Hay again, and ſo at noon, and likewiſe at night: and thus uſe them to feed from time to time. Alſo it will be beſt to place and ſet their Troughs on the further ſide of their Crib, nigh unto the wall, and to ſet it two foot high and more, and their Racks likewiſe ſhould ſtand of a good height, as of four foot or more, to be made almoſt as broad beneath as above, for fear of tangling their Horns therein, and the Rack-ſtands ſet not paſſing four inches aſſunder, yet ſome do uſe to feed them on the ground with a Rack, but that we imagine to be more duſty and waſtful of Hay. They do alſo give them, ſometimes for change, of Wheat and Barley Chaff, with the Gurgine thereof; for that after it (they ſay) they will drink well. But the Hay is the chiefeſt Fodder, that will make the hard fleſh. Likewiſe their Standards or Poſts to fatten them by, ſhould be made round and ſmooth, of the bigneſs of ſixteen inches about, and ſeven foot long, and ſet them four foot wide one Poſt from another; you muſt ſee likewiſe that they are ſet faſt and ſtrong, both above and beneath his Neck and Standard, ſo that the one ſide of the Neck ſhall be always cloſe unto the ſaid Standard or Poſt, by which order of tying ſo, they ſhall not at any time bow their Heads ſo as to lick themſelves. And alſo if you tye them otherwiſe as Plough-oxen are, with a Sole and a Wythe, which is made like a Yeak, it will be too long a tye from the Standard, and they will then both lick themſelves and ſtrike each other with their Horns; therefore the other way of handling and tying is beſt: ſome make a light Cradle of Wood, and put it about their Necks, which will keep their Heads from turning back to lick themſelves in any part of their Bodies, but it is very uneaſie to lye down with: others do alſo ſmear them with their one Dung, then caſt Aſhes, which keeps them from licking. And alſo for the cleanſing and forming of them, they uſe morning and evening to ſhovel down their Dung, and to ſee from time to time that they are clean kept, for that is a very great furtherance to their

fatting and likeing. And as for the Littering of them, there are ſome againſt it, and do not Litter at all, but let them lye on fair dry Planks, and in their own Dung. Yet ſome are of this opinion, that to Litter them ſomewhat under the fore-part of their Bodies might do them good. The Keeper muſt from time to time look to them, and mark if they do eat and drink as they ſhould do; for ſometimes there will grow Diſeaſes amongſt them in their Mouths, as Barbs, and ſuch like, which will much hinder their feeding, and kill them in time if they have not help, and are not very well looked to. Some do make holes behind them, and ſet therein Earthen-pots, even to the ground, to keep their Piſs in, and ſo cover them with ſmall Boards or Planks, with which Piſs they do uſe to waſh the bodies of thoſe Apple-trees which are inclining for to be Worm-eaten, or Canker-eaten. They alſo uſe to caſt the ſaid Piſs amongſt the Roots in their Gardens, for that will kill and cauſe the Worms to void, and ſave the Roots from being rotten: Thus much for the ordering and fatting of Oxen in the Stall.

How a Man may be rightly informed for to Buy and Sell Oxen.

You are to underſtand, that Oxen are according to the Region and Country where they are bred; for as there is a diverſity of Grounds and Countries, ſo likewiſe there are diverſities of Bodies, of Courage, of the Hair or Horns of them: for thoſe Oxen in *Aſia* are of one ſort, thoſe in *France* of another: neither are there ſo many diverſities of Provinces, but as many diverſities of Beaſts; as in *Italy*, in *Capua*, they have White-oxen, of a ſmall body, yet very good to labour at the Plough, and to till the Ground; alſo in the Dutchey of *Urben* there are great Oxen both white and red, mighty in body, and of a great courage. In *Tuſcany* and about *Rome*, the Oxen are well-ſet, thick and fit to labour: likewiſe in the *Alps* and Hills of *Burgundy*, they are very ſtrong, and can endure all labour. But nevertheleſs although they do thus differ, yet the Buyer ſhall mark and underſtand herein certain general Rules of Oxen, the which *Mago* of *Carthage* hath given us, and which have been confirmed by the moſt experienced Buyers of Cattel: He that will buy Oxen, muſt buy young Oxen well quartered,

MI - 1994

ed, having large and big members, with long horns, somewhat black, ſtrong and big; his fore-head broad, and his brows wrinkled, his ears rough within, and hairy like Velvet, his eyes great and large, his muzzle black, his noſtrils crooked within, and very open and wide, the chine of his neck long, thick and fleſhy, the dewlap or ſkin that turneth under his throat, to be great, and hanging almoſt to his knees, his breaſt round and big, and his ſhoulders large and deep. His belly big, compaſs'd in fatting deep, his ribs wide and open, his reins large, his back ſtraight and flat, with a little bending towards the rump; his thighs round, his legs ſtraight and well truſt, his hoofs and claws on his feet to be large and broad under foot, his tail long and well haired; to be brief, his body to be thick and ſhort, his colour to be red or black, black is accounted the beſt; alſo to be gentle and eaſie to handle or touch, and tame enough to lead. If the young Huſbandman would buy lean Kine, or Oxen to feed, he muſt firſt ſee that they are young, for the younger they are the ſooner they will feed; let him look well that their hair ſtair not, but that they do uſe to lick themſelves; and ſee alſo that they are whole mouthed, in wanting none of their teeth, for although he have got the gout, and broken both of tail and pizle, yet will he feed; you ſhall chuſe him with a broad rib and a thick hide, not looſe ſkinned, nor yet to ſtick too hard to the ribs and ſides, for then they will not feed ſo well. If you buy Oxen for the Plough, ſee that they are young and not gouty, nor yet broken haired of tail or pizle. Again, if you buy Kine for the pale, ye muſt alſo ſee that they are young, and having ſuch properties as before are mentioned, gentle to milk, and likewiſe to nouriſh up their Calves. But if the young Graſier be reſolved to buy fat or lean Kine, let him firſt handle them, and ſee if they be ſoft on the crop behind the ſhoulder, and alſo upon the hinder moſt rib, and upon the huckle-bone, and on the notch by his tail; and to ſee likewiſe if your Ox have a great cod; and a Cow to have a big navel; for that is a ſign that he ſhould be well tallow'd. You muſt take heed where you buy lean Cattel or fat, and of whom, to know where they were bred; for if you buy from a better ground then you have yourſelf, theſe Cattel will not ſo well

like

like with you: you ſhall alſo look that there be no manner of ſickneſs amongſt thoſe Cattel in the Quarter or Pariſh wherein you intend to buy them, for if there be any Murren or other infectious Diſeaſe, it is a great hazard to buy any Beaſt that comes from thence, for one Beaſt will ſoon take a Diſeaſe from another.

How to keep a Cow that is great-bellied with Calf.

You muſt preſerve your Kine with Calf, as nigh as you can, from all miſchances and dangers from the tenth Month; for when the Cow waxeth great-bellyed, and alſo in Winter, if ſhe be then with Calf, you muſt nouriſh her in the Stall, from the eighth Month, becauſe of extream cold, and then for to give her good Meat: but in Summer ye ſhall give her the branches or tender boughs of Trees. Let her feed in the mornings in the Fields, and ſo milk her, and give her alſo in the evening freſh Forrage, when ſhe cometh to the Houſe: and likewiſe in the mornings before ſhe goes to the Field; and when ſhe hath calved, you ſhall keep back the Calf when ſhe goeth to the Field: thus uſe her ſtill as you ſhall ſee cauſe. They do uſe to labour their Barren Kine after nine Years, therefore they are put into the uſe of drawing the Yoak as Oxen are.

Of a Cow that wants Milk, having but lately Calved.

To cauſe her Milk to increaſe, you ſhall boil Anniſeeds in good Ale, or Wine, then ſtrain it and give it her milk warm.

Another, Take a handful of the Leaves of the Hedg-vine, called Briony; boil it in Ale or Wine, and ſtrain it, and ſo give it her.

A good way to Cut or Geld a Calf.

You ſhall cauſe one to hold down his fore part, then bind his hinder Feet with ſome cord, half a yard aſſunder, alſo let his fore-feet be bound, and let the ſaid holder ſet both his knees on the Calf, nigh to his legs, and ſo cut him gently, and anoint his flanks with ſome freſh greaſe, then rub his reins with ſome cold water mixed with ſalt, and he ſhall do well. Some do uſe to geld when the Calves are young, and ſome do uſe to let them run a year or more before they geld them, which is counted more dangerous. After they are gelt keep them in good paſtures, that they may be the

readier and ſtronger to labour at three years. Alſo if the Calves be not gelded within one year, they will not prove great. If there grow any Impoſthume after the ge'ding, burn his ſtones to aſhes, and caſt the powder thereon, and it will help him. Some are more Aſtrologically given to obſerve Seaſons and Planets, and think it beſt to geld them in *Autumn*, when the Moon is in the decreaſe, and the Sign from the place: In Spawing, Gelding, Cutting or Letting-bloud, theſe Signs are moſt dangerous, if the Moon have power over them, as, *Taurus*, *Leo*, *Gemini*, *Virgo*, and the latter part of *Libra* and *Scorpio*; alſo the two Signs governed under *Saturn*, as, *Capricorn* and *Aquarius*; the reſt are all good, as, *Aries*, *Capricorn*, *Sagitarius*, and *Piſces*; beſure alſo that the Moon be not in them.

To Rear and for to Breed Calves for Increaſe.

If you will breed Calves to make young Bulls, take no Calf that is calved within the Prime, which is counted five days after the Change; for theſe, as ſome Huſbandmen report, will not prove well. Nor likewiſe any Calf (or other) for then Calves are not good to keep, but to eat and ſell: and among a hundred Calves two ſhall be ſufficient for to make Bulls; as for the reſt it will be beſt to geld them, after that they are calved. It will be neceſſary for Huſbandmen to rear as many Calves as they can conveniently keep to maintain their ſtocks, and chiefly theſe Calves that do fall betwixt *Candlemas* and *May*, for in that ſeaſon their milk may be beſt ſpared, and by that time there will be ſufficient graſs to wean them, and by the Winter following they will be ſtrong enough to ſave themſelves harmleſs amongſt other Cattel, having now and then ſome ſmall helps: And alſo the Dams by *June* ſhall be the readier to take the Bull, and to bring other Calves in the time aforeſaid; and if a Cow tarry till after *May*, e'er that ſhe calve, the calf will be too weak in the Winter following, and the Dam will not be ſo ready to take Bull again, but thereby oft times grow barren. Alſo to rear a Calf after *Michaelmas*, and to keep the Dam at her meat, as they do in ſome Countries, would be coſtly in the Winter-time; and a Cow abroad will give more milk with a little graſs, than with fodder lying in the cloſe houſe, or fed with hay or ſtraw, remaining in the ſtall; for the dry

dry and hard meat doth diminiſh more milk a great deal than graſs. As for thoſe Huſbandmen that have but ſmall paſtures, or none at all, they muſt do as they may, though in my mind it were better for them to ſell their Calves than to rear them, whereby they may ſave the milk for more profit to the keeping of their houſes, and the Cow will rather go to the Bull again. Alſo if the Huſbandman do go with an Ox-plough, it will be convenient for him to raiſe two, or rear two or three Cow-calves, to hold up his ſtock, if he can ſo do, and it will be the more profit; as alſo it is better to wean Calves at graſs than at hard meat, if they were at graſs before: and thoſe that can have ſeveral paſtures for their Kine and Calves, ſhall do well, and rear with leſs coſt than others. The weaning of Calves with Hay and Water will make them have great bellies, becauſe they do not ſtir ſo well therewith as with Graſs, and they will the rather rot when they come to graſs: and again in Winter they ſhould be put into houſes rather than to remain abroad.

To help the Garget in the Throat of a Beaſt.

If the Garget be in the throat of a Beaſt, it will grievouſly affect him; this Diſtemper is commonly taken through ſome great drought for want of water, it will cauſe a ſwelling under the ſhoulders and ſides thereof. The Remedy is, you ſhall caſt him, then cut and flea the ſkin on both ſides as far as any ſwelling doth appear; ſo done, take of the whiteſt ſifted Aſhes that you can, and mix them with the Grounds of Stale or old Piſs, and ſtir them both well together, then waſh the fleſhy ſore therewith.

To Cure the Garget on the Tongue.

The Garget of the Tongue of the Beaſt, Ox, or Cow, is a certain ſwelling under the root thereof, which cauſes the Head and Face to ſwell, and to froth alſo at the Mouth, the Beaſt will then forſake his meat, often gulping in his throat. The Remedy is, you muſt caſt him on ſome ſtraw, and then take forth his tongue, and with the point of a ſtump knife ſlit along the middle vein under an inch, right from the root of the tongue, and there will come forth black bloud and water, which proceeds from the gall; then rub the place with ſalt and vinegar, and he will recover and do well. This hath been often proved.

MI - 1994

Against the Garget coming by any Push.

Whereas the Garget is in some Cattel, from some bruise, or some push, you shall cut a hole where the bruises are, and make it hollow to the bottom thereof: Some do cut and race the skin as far as the bruise goeth, and then make, and have ready of beaten Garlick and the tops of the sharp Nettles, with some Rusty-bacon on the outside, beat all well together, and then put it into the hole: then you must bathe it twice a day, as followeth, Take the Grounds of Ale or Beer, and the Soot of a Chimney, of white sifted Ashes, of Black-soap, if you can, mix all these together, stir it well over the fire, and make it warm; then bathe and wash the sore place; use this morning and evening till it be thoroughly whole. This is an approved Medicine.

Against the Garget in the Maw.

The Garget in the Maw of Cattel is a dangerous Distemper, which is got when the Beasts covet to eat of Crabs or Acorns lying under Trees, which Fruit for the most part they swallow whole without breaking or chewing, so that it lieth whole in the Maw, and will not digest; but in continuance of time they will grow and sprout in their Maws (as some say) till they are like to die thereof. The Remedy is, you should take a good quantity of whole Mustard-seed, and mix it with Wine and strong Ale, and give it to the Beast.

Another, Chop and bruise small a good handful of Camomil, and then mix it with Wine, and give it him.

To Kill Lice and Ticks in Cattel.

If your Cattel, Oxen or Kine be Lowsie, which proceeds sometimes from some Sickness, or Surfeit in taking cold after a great wet or rain; and sometimes by being too lean, whereby so long as they are vexed with Lice, they well not prosper. The Remedies are, you shall take the Decoction of Wild-olives, mixt with Salt, then rub and chafe the Beast all over therewith.

Another, Take of Quick-silver killed in Olive-oyl, and well mixt together, and therewith anoint: or boil it with good Vinegar, and so wash him therewith. And some do use Ashes on their backs and the rain kills them.

Ano-

Another, Take the Bear-foot Herb, ſtamp it, and then ſtrain it with Vinegar mixt with it, and ſo apply it.

For the Murrain in Cattle.

The *Murrain*, much incident to this ſort of Cattle, is known by driveling, running at the Noſe, and Mouth, dulneſs and ſinking of the Eyes, pining away, *&c.*

To Cure this, Take Fennel-ſeed, the roots of Angelico, and Sea-thiſtle; ſtamp and infuſe them over a gentle fire with Red-wine and Ale; give the liquid part hot, and keep the Beaſt warm, and two or three hours after make him a Maſh of Wheat, boiled in Small Beer.

For the Flux or Lasks,

Take dried Sloes, bruiſe them to powder, add Raiſins and dried Grapes; boil them in Vinegar, and give them hot when the Beaſt is faſting, and keep him ſo an hour or two after.

For the Lasks, or Ray in Calves, or Cough in young Bullocks or Heifers. For the Calves,

Take new Milk, put in ſo much Renit as may curdle it; warm it over a fire, and give it them hot two or three times. As for the other, Take a pint of Barley, the yolk of an Egg, a handful of Raiſins; boil them in a quart of *Aqua vitæ*, and give it them as hot as poſſible may be endured.

For Scalds or Mangineſs.

Rub them well with a Hair-cloth dipped in the Juyce of Garlick and Rue, and a day after with the Concoction of Penny-royal, and flower of Brimſtone, made with Water and Bay-ſalt.

For any Diſtemper in the Lungs,

Take Cloves, Anniſeeds, Long-pepper, Turmerick and Fenugreck, of each an ounce; boil them in ſmall Ale, and give half a pint hot in a morning for a week.

For Piſſing Bloud.

Let them ſtand twenty four hours without drinking, and then let them bloud in the Tail; after that boil Nettles, and Aſh-leaves, or the Bark of an Aſh-tree, in Spring-water and give it them hot.

For the Taint and Gargets,

Take Urine and Bay-ſalt, with the Roots of Red-docks;

UMI - 1994

boil them and bathe the afflicted Place very hot morning and evening, and afterwards anoint it with Sheep's Suet as hot as may be endured.

For ſtoppage of Urine,

Take a pint of French-wine, the Whites of nine Eggs, ſix Cloves of Garlick; give the liquid part well preſſed and ſtrained faſting.

For any poiſonous Infection, or pain in the Belly, ſwelling or internal Bruiſe,

Take four ounces of the Rhind of Elder, a handful of Longwort, an ounce of Licoriſh, a handful of Rue; boil them in three pints of Ale, and whilſt they are boiling put in a handful of Bay-ſalt, ſix Cloves of Garlick, and four Eggs with the Shells; add a pint of Beer, an ounce of Venice-treacle, and the like quantity of Bay-berries; give the liquor hot.

For the Sperenges and Staggers.

Let him bloud in the Fore-head by ſlitting the ſkin acroſs, and after a ſhort bleeding put warm Vinegar into his Noſe, his Head being held upward.

For being Hide-bound, which hinders the Growth of Cattle,

Boil Bay-leaves in Water, and rub them over as hot as may be, and then let them bloud in the Neck; and after that rub them with Lees of Wine, and Neats-foot Oil.

For the Feaver in Cattle.

Let them bloud in the Tail, give them Colewort-leaves to eat; boil Colts-foot, the leaves or branches of the Vine, and the Roots of Violets in Water, giving them the liquid part as hot as may be.

To Cure Halting.

Slit the Claws till they bleed, and bind a Cloth, dipped in Vinegar and Salt, to the place, and keep the Beaſt in a dry place; and ſo by twice or thrice renewing it, that diſorder will ceaſe.

To Cure the Swelling in Cattle by breaking into freſh Paſture, and over-feeding, or by licking up ſome venomous Matter,

Take half a pint of Sallad-oil, as much warm Milk, an ounce of Licoriſh powder, and an ounce of Mithridate; give them very hot, and keep the Beaſt in motion, till he voids at both ends, or the Swelling abates.

For

For any Blain, or outward Sorrance,

Take half an ounce of Turpentine, the like of Verde-greaſe, an ounce of Bees-wax, and the like of Mutton-ſuet; make them into an Ointment over a gentle fire, and apply them Plaiſter-wiſe two or three times to the place grieved.

For the Pains in the Bowels,

Take a handful of Fumitory, as much May-weed, or Camomil; boil them in Milk and Small-beer, and give it hot.

For the Quinzy,

Take half a pint of Vinegar, as much Sallad-oil, an ounce of Mithridate; give them very hot.

Of Rams, Ewes, and Lambs: Their Ordering, Breeding, the Cure of Diſeaſes and Grievances incident to them.

To chuſe good Breeders for the increaſe of Sheep.

LEt your Ram be of a large ſtature, of Body long and full bellied, his Tail long and buſhy, his Body thick of Wool, his Eyes black and ſparkling, his Body broad, his Cods large, though not over-hanging his Loins, and Ears large, covered with much Wool, his Horns large and bending with the tips from him; alſo a white and clear Palate and Tongue.

The Ewe with a deep Belly, white Wool, ſoft and ſhining on her Neck, ſmooth Horns, large Dugs, her Eyes gold-colour, her Legs long and lean, her Tail full of Wool, and a long Viſage.

The beſt time of Covering.

For the beſt breed, let not the Ewe take the Ram before ſhe be full two Years old, leſt the Lambs prove weakly and ſickly, of a ſtunted breed or growth; and in this caſe ſhe will bear from two to ſeven Years old, but thoſe Lambs of her two firſt Years are the beſt for breed.

How, after Caſting, to order your Lambs.

As ſoon as may be ſet him on his Legs, and direct him to his Dam's Teat, having milked the firſt Milk out, becauſe

cause that will prove hurtful to him, by reason of its curdling; if he refuse to take the Teat, open his Mouth and spurt some Milk into it, which will soon make him more familiar: Or, if the Ewe's Dugs be tender, suckle him through a little Horn, which you must provide for that purpose. And, if they grow wanton, sever them with Hurdles, and tie them with soft Bands to Stakes in the Ground, that they may not frisk, spend their Flesh or hurt each other: Suckle them Morning and Evening, before the Dams go to Pasture: Give them a little Milk and Bran mixed with Flower.

When they are weaned, which, in warm Weather, may be done at seven Weeks end, keep them well fed, lest their pining after their Dams make them pine or throw them into Diseases; and geld them not till three Months old, keeping them warm and giving them Bran in their Water, pretty hot, for five or six Days after. And so, by well looking to and ordering them, fear not to have an extraordinary good Breed.

If you design to keep Ram-Lambs for breed, take the best and liveliest of the two, where the Ewe has two Ram-Lambs at one time; and see that the feeding and bringing up be carefully observed, ever now and then sprinkling some Salt and Fennel-seeds swelled, bruised in their watering Tubs or Troughs.

And thus, having given you an Introduction as to the Breeding them, I shall proceed to the Diseases incident to them and their Cures.

For the Scab or Mange.

Whether this appear without or within the Skin, delay it not, but take a Quart of Man's Urin, boil the Leaves or Bark of Elder and Hemlock in it; then strain it, and add a Pint of Water wherein Tobacco-stalks have been soaked; clip off the Wool pretty close, and wash the place Morning and Evening, as hot as may be endured: Give them Bay-salt in their Water, and keep them from wet Pastures or much green Feeding.

For bruised Joynts, broken Claws, &c.

For the first, anoint them with the Oyl of Spike; then bind

bind up the bruiſed or broken Joynt with a Poultis made of Mallows, Grounſel and Bettony, beaten with Hogs-lard, and fryed in it, applying it as hot as can be.

For the latter: If the Claws be over-grown, lame, or broken, pair them, mix a little Tar-water with Hogs-lard, Bees-wax and Turpentine, and with a Plaiſter of it bind up the bruiſed Claw that it may be kept from wet and dirt.

For the Rot or Plague.

For this when you firſt perceive it among your Sheep, having ſeparated the Infected from the Sound, Take the Herb Mellilot, Comfry, Rue, Polipodium of the Oak, and Walnut-tree-leaves or bark, each a handful, boil them in a quart of Water and a pint of *Aqua-vitæ*, with two ounces of *Venice*-Treacle or *Mithridate*, and give a quarter of a pint at a time to one Sheep, very hot, for four or five mornings and it will cure them.

For any Diſeaſe in the Lungs of Sheep.

Take Lung-wort, Sage and Colts-foot, a Herb ſo called, bruiſe them with a root of Garlick, and two ounces of Hony, then boil them in a quart of White-wine, with a few ſlices of Licoriſh; and give a quarter of a pint hot. This alſo cures Purſiveneſs, Cough, or Wheeſing in Breathing.

For the Head-ach, or pains in the Head of Sheep,

Take ſix grains of *Aſſa fœtida*, two ſpoonfuls of the Juyce of Sage, a quartern of Wine-vinegar, and give them the Sheep as warm as may be.

In caſe of Rheums, Catarrhs, or Coughs.

Take an ounce of Dill-ſeed, and as much of Bay-berries, a handful of Vervine, and two ounces of brown Sugar-candy; bruiſe and boil them in a pint of Cyder, or Verjuyce, and give it faſting as hot as can be endured.

For the Plague and Rot, another.

Waſh them with Water wherein Balm has been boiled, give them to drink a Water wherein Rue, Sow-thiſtle and Vervine have been boiled, and ſeaſon it with Allom.

For Boils, Apoſthumes, or Ulcers, that are not come to a head.

Mix Rye-flower, Yolks of Eggs, and Tar, applying them Plaiſter-wiſe, and when they are drawn to a head, launce or prick them, and apply Honey, Allom and Roſin, made into a Salve over a gentle fire.

For

For Scabs, or Breaking out of that nature,

Take a quarter of a pint of the Juyce of Hyſop, the like of Camomil, and a quart of Water wherein Tobacco-ſtalks have been boiled, two ounces of Brimſtone-flower, a handful of Fern-roots, and a quart of Urine; waſh the Sheep with it hot twice a day.

For Purſiveneſs,

Take a quart of Vinegar, an ounce of Licoriſh-powder, *Venice*-treacle, half an ounce, *Carduus* an ounce; boil them and give them hot. This does likewiſe for ſhort Wind, and cures the Swelling in the Belly.

For St. Anthony's *Fire.*

Bathe them with Goat's Milk, and the Juyce of Briony very hot, and give them Water wherein Sage and Endive have been boiled.

To ſupple broken Joynts, Sprains, Wrenches and fractured Bones.

Put thoſe that are diſlocated in their right places, then take an Ointment, Bees-wax, Turpentine, Deers-ſuet, the Juyce of Mugworr, Stone-pitch, and Mellior, ſoftned with the Oil of Earth-worms, and bind up the place, ſuppling it with Ointment as occaſion requires.

For Lameneſs, which is occaſioned by too much Wool growing in the fleſhy part of their Feet.

Rub between their Claws Allom, Vinegar, and Bay-ſalt.

Of Swine; their Breeding and Ordering, with Directions for Curing the Diſeaſes incident to them.

How to have a good Breed of Swine.

LEt the Choice of your Boar be ſuch a one whoſe mouth is drawn upwards and long, his breaſt thick and broad, as alſo his ſhoulders, his thighs thick and ſhort, white of colour, mixed with ſandy ſpots, he being almoſt as thick as long, well briſtled, and a pair of even cods.

The Sow you make choice of muſt be long of body, large and well bellied, many teats, her buttocks long, her ribs broad, her head little, her ſnout long, legs ſhort, and white of complexion.

Then

Then the Boar at a year and the Sow at two years old may be put together, when the Moon encreases, keeping her after ſhe is three times ſerved, in a warm yard or ſtye, according to the ſeaſon, and if in the Winter-time, give her grains, bran, peaſe and beans, and ſometimes roots and cabage, or colwort-leaves. The moſt convenient time for her taking Boar is in *February*, and then the Farrow will come in warm weather, for thoſe that come in Winter are either ſtunted or troubled with many Diſeaſes more than the other: Geld them at three months old, if you would have your Pork or Bacon extraordinary ſweet; but if large and fat, let them run with their ſtones till ſix months; and after gelding keep them up warm for a week, and give them pollard and ground beans. As for your Sow-pigs you intend to fat up, ſpay them not till nine months at ſooneſt, and be curious in doing leſt you deſtroy them, for if any ſtitch in ſewing up the rim of the belly take hold on the guts, the Sow will pine away, and never grow fat, if ſhe die not ſoon by it. And now for the Diſeaſes incident to them.

To cure Pains in the Head or Teth.

Firſt let the Swine bloud under the tongue, then boil Rue, Savin, and Crople-ſtone in their water, and ſcatter ſome ſweet Malt in it, and ſo they will the better be delighted to take it.

For the Head-ach, or Sleepy-evil.

Bleed them under the Tongue, and rub the Wound with Bay-ſalt, giving them for a time Cabage or Colewort-leaves, Tears, Peaſe and Whey, to drink.

An Approved Remedy for the Meaſles.

This Diſtemper is occaſioned by ſurfeiting through unwholſom Feeding, and is diſcerned by the coming of knors or pimples under the tongue: To remedy is, waſh the Swine in Brine or Salt-water, pretty warm, bruiſe Garlick, Peels of Lemons and Grapes, ſteep them in ſtrong Vinegar, and give them him to drink.

Another.

Rub them over with Water and Salt, mix Parſley-roots with their Meat, and put Allom into their Water, in which ſteep Rue.

If Agues or Feaver afflict them, let them bloud in the Neck-

Neck-vein, and Tail, and give them warm Water and Bran thrice a day; alſo Water between whiles wherein Parſnips and Pepper have been boiled.

For the Swine-Pox,

Take an ounce of Mithridate, and as much Pepper, half a pint of Olive-oil, a pint of new Ale, and two ounces of Honey, give them very warm.

Another.

Take, to remedy this, three ounces of Honey, one of Mithridate, a quarter of a pint of Olive-oil, and half an ounce of bruiſed Allom, in a pint of Lambs or Sheeps bloud.

For Rheums, or Catarrhs,

Take half an ounce of Brimſtone, as much of Burgundia-pitch, hold his head by force over them, whilſt burning on a chafing-diſh of coles; after which give a drench of Garlick, Pepper and Rue boiled in new Small-beer.

For the Plague, or any Diſeaſe in the Melt,

Take three ounces of Honey, two ounces of Bees-wax, an ounce of Ginger, and two ounces of Coriander-ſeeds, boil them in three pints of Milk, ſtrain the liquid part and give it hot.

To Cure the Flux,

Take Nut-gall two ounces, as much Starch, and a handful of Bettony, half an ounce of Turpentine; boil them in a pint of Milk and a quart of Vinegar, and give it hot three mornings.

For the Belly-ach,

Take an ounce of Long-pepper, a handful of Fennel-ſeed, an ounce of Fenugreek-roots, and two ounces of Honey, boil them in a pint of White-wine, and a quart of Stale-beer, and give it faſting.

For the Diſeaſes in the Eyes of Swine.

Take Rue, Pimpernel and Vervine, each a little handful; dry them in an Oven ſo that they may be powdered, and blow the Powder, mixed with the Powder of Bole-armoniack, into the Eyes grieved, and it takes away Spots, ſtays Fluxes of Rheums and Redneſs.

The

The Vermin-killer:

BEING

A very neceſſary Family-Book, containing exact Rules and Directions for the artificial Deſtroying of Vermin.

To Kill Rats and Mice.

TAke *Hellibore*-leaves, mix it with Wheat-flower; make it into a ſtiff Paſte with live Honey, and lay it into Holes where Rats and Mice come, and when they have eat of it, it's preſent Death. Approved, *Paxamus.*

To make Rats and Mice Blind.

Take Tithimalum beaten to Powder, ſift it through a fine Sieve, then mix it with a like quantity of Wheat-flower, then put to it a ſufficient quantity of *Metheglen* to make it into a ſtiff Paſte, and lay it in the uſual places where the Mice and Rats come, and in a ſhort time after they have eat it, you will ſee the effects, for they will become Beetle-blind. Approved, *Anatiolus.*

To drive away Rats and Mice from a Houſe or other place.

Take the Herb wild Marjorum, called in Latin *Origanum*, and burn it in all the Rooms of the Houſe, or place where you would be rid of the Mice, and they will immediately depart, and come no more ſo long as the Scent laſteth. Approved, *Praxamus.*

To gather together all the Rats and Mice into one place in a Houſe or Barn, and to kill them.

Take a Braſs or Copper-pot, as big as you can get, and put into it the Dregs of Oil about half full, and then ſet it in the moſt convenient place in the Houſe, about the middle, and all the Rats and Mice will make their appearance, as if it were to be an Aſſembly of an Army of Rats and Mice,

and you may then ſtrow about the place Pot-aſhes, and it kills them all. Approved, *Aborto.*

To Catch Moles.

If you deſire to catch Moles, lay before the Mole-holes a head of Garlick or Onion, and they will immediately forſake their Holes, and may be taken by a Dog. Approved, *Albertus.*

To Kill Moles.

Take white Hellibore braiſed very ſmall, mix with it Wheat-flower, the White of Eggs, Milk and Wine, and lay little Cakes of it in the mouth of the Holes, and the Moles will greedily eat of it, and it certainly killeth them. Approved, *Paxamus.*

To Kill Weaſles.

Take Sal-armoniack and Wheat-flower, mix it into a Paſte with Honey, and throw it in ſuch places where the Weaſles uſually come; they greedily eat it, and it quickly killeth them. Approved, *Cornel. Agrippa.*

To prevent Weaſles from ſucking of Eggs.

Take Rue and lay it about the places where the Hens lay, and the Weaſles will not come near it.

To drive the Snakes and Adders out of the Garden.

Plant in ſeveral places of the Garden Wormwood, and they will not frequent the Gardens. Approved, *Paxamus.*

To Kill Snakes and Adders.

Take a large Reddiſh and ſtrike the Snake or Adder with it, and one blow will kill them. Approved.

To Kill Piſmires.

Take the Root of wild Cucumers, and ſet them on fire, where the Piſmires are, and the Smoak will kill them. Approved, *Agrippa.*

To preſerve Plants from the Piſmires.

Take Lupin beaten with the Dregs of Oil, and anoint the bottoms of the Plants therewith. Approved.

To drive away Piſmires.

Take an Earthen Diſh full of Piſmires, and the Earth where they are, and make a good Fire, and lay the Earthen Pot on the Fire, and the Piſmires will not remain near that place. Approved.

To

To Kill Bugs.

Take a convenient quantity of freſh Tar, mix it with the Juice of wild Cucumer; let it ſtand a day or two, ſtirring it four or five times a day; then anoint the Bedſteads with it, and all the Bugs will die. *Approved*, Paxamus.

Another.

Take Squilly beaten to Powder, mixed with the beſt Wine-Vinegar; then take a Spunge and wet it in it, and rub the Bedſteads, and it will kill the Bugs. *Approved*, Cornelius Agrippa.

To kill Fleas.

Take Wormwood, and the Root of wild Cucumer, and boil them in Pickle, and ſprinkle it in the Room, and it will certainly kill the Fleas. *Approved*, Cornel. Agrippa.

Another.

Take *Malenthium* ſteeped in Water three or four days, then ſprinkle the Room with it, and you will immediately find the effects. *Paxamus.*

To kill Lice.

Take Salt-water, and rub the afflicted places with it, or Vinegar or Onyan, and mix in it Allum and Alloes, and therewith anoint the place. *Alex.*

Another.

Take Hogs-lard, Quickſilver, and Sage, as much of each as is needful, mix them together to a Salve, and anoint the afflicted places. *From an Italian.*

To kill Crab-lice.

Take a roaſted Apple, and take the Skin and Core from it, and beat it in a Mortar with as much Quickſilver as will make it into an Oyntment, and therewith dreſs the afflicted places. *From a good Friend.*

For Nits and Lice in the Head.

Take three Ounces of Oyl of Olives, one Ounce of Wax, three Drams of *Staveſacre*, and as much Quickſilver, and of theſe make a Salve, and anoint the Head all over, and it certainly kills the Nits and Lice. *Approved*, Cornel. Agrippa.

To kill Caterpillars.

Take Fig-leave-aſhes, and caſt it on the root, and it deſtroys the Caterpillars. *Anat.*

Ano-

Another.

Take Ox-piſs and Lees of Oyl, and boil them together, and it kills the Caterpillar infallibly, if you caſt it upon the Trees or Buſhes where they are. *Anat.*

To kill Flies.

Take white Hellibore, and ſteep it in ſweet Milk, mix with it Orpiment, and ſprinkle the Room and places where the Flies come, and they will die. *Approved.*

Another.

Take Allum and Origanum, beat them and mix them with Milk and ſprinkle them, as before. *Approved.*

To gather the Flies together.

Take a deep Earthen Pot, and lay in it beaten Coriander, and all the Flies in the Houſe ſhall be gathered together. *Approved*, Anatolius.

To keep Cattle from Injuries by Flies.

Anoint the Breaſt with Oyl wherein Bakeler hath been boiled, and the Flies ſhall not come near him. *Approved.*

The Art of taking Fiſh.

Take Time, Savory and Elder-leaves, of each a like quantity, take the Suit of an Ox or Sheep, the Lees of Wine, and make this in a Morrar, then break it into little Balls, and throw them into the Water an Hour before you intend to fiſh. *Approved*, Albertus.

Another.

Take the Blood of an Ox or Sheep, then take the Dung of a Sheep out of the ſmall Guts, while it is hot, and mix it with the Blood, and make ſmall Baits of it, and let them dry in the Sun, and caſt the Balls into the Water, and they will gather all the Fiſh together. *Approved*, Cornel Agrippa.

To take all Sorts of Birds, Fowls, &c.

Take ſuch Seed as the Fowls or Birds are wont to feed on, and lay it a ſoaking in the Mother of Wine, mixed with the Juice of Cicute, and when it is well ſoaked throw it in the places where the Fowl or Birds feed, and they will be preſently drunk, and loſe their ſenſes, and you may take them with your hand. *Approved*, Albertus.

F I N I S.

UMI - 19

UMI - 19

MI - 1994